

ENGLISH



萧立明 著

英语结构要略



机械工业出版社
China Machine Press



英语结构要略

萧立明 著



机械工业出版社



中国人学英语是要掌握另外一种语言系统, 能否具有对英语结构“内化”的能力呢? 成功者的答案是肯定的。那么诀窍在哪里? 答案是将“内化”过程的两个方面即语言学习(language learning)和语言习得(language acquisition)有效结合起来。“学习”是指对英语语音、词汇、语法、篇章、修辞等各个层次的知识进行系统学习; “习得”在这里是指在英语环境中(听、说、读等)和在英语交际中, 不知不觉地掌握英语的全过程。作者从事高校英语教学近四十年, 本着“以结构系统为先导, 以功能项目为纲目, 以输入强化为手段”的指导思想让数万学生掌握了英语结构的奥妙。本书就是“以结构为先导”的实际教学内容。

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

英语结构要略/萧立明著.-北京: 机械工业出版社, 2003.8

ISBN 7-111-12765-X

I. 英… II. 萧… III. 英语-语法结构 IV. H314

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字(2003)第067011号

机械工业出版社(北京市百万庄大街22号 邮政编码 100037)

责任编辑: 薛丽娜 版式设计: 张丽花

北京机工印刷厂印刷·新华书店北京发行所发行

2003年8月第1版第1次印刷

1000mm×1400mm B5·9.125印张·312千字

0001-5000册

定价: 23.00元

凡购本图书, 如有缺页、倒页、脱页, 由本社发行部调换

本社购书热线电话: (010) 68993821、88379646

封面无防伪标均为盗版

前 言

人类进入新世纪，中国申奥成功，加入世贸，面临着把改革开放全面推向新世纪的重大历史使命。但由于受过去历史背景的种种影响，我国全民英语水平不高；“影响改革的进程和社会进步”（李岚清语）。为了改变这种局面，我国英语界同仁一直在探索新的教学原则与方法，并在教学实践中逐步实施。上下求索的精神，确值敬佩。与此同时，针对过去教学中的个别弊病，也不乏有人“标新立异”，抓住市场转轨的商机，将形形色色的“英语”推向市场。究其原因，作者以为，一则是因为语言学与应用语言学界的学者，忙于对纯理论的研究，无暇顾及将深奥的理论深入浅出地向社会作介绍，一则是因为种种外语刊物重理论而轻实践造成的。自然科学的研究就曾出现过这种现象：发现科学规律的往往成为学术泰斗，而将科学规律赋予实践的常常被人们忽视。社会科学也是如此。看来科学普及工作还有空白。本着普及语言学与应用语言学的目的，作者将从事英语教学 36 年来在英语结构上的一些体会，结合英汉语比较，汇编成本书，奉献给读者。

国外早有语言学家提出，语言包括语言能力 (competence) 和语言运用 (performance) 两个方面。前者指操某种语言的人，有把这种语言的语法“内化”的能力。也就是说，他能创造和理解各种句子，包括没有听见过的句子；他还能分清什么是这种语言能有的句子，什么不是。后者指个人在说话和写作时对语言的运用。中国人学英语是要掌握另外一种语言系统，能否具有对英语结构“内化”的能力呢？成功者的答案是肯定的。那么诀窍在哪里？国外也早有应用语言学家进行研究。这个“内化”的过程有两个方面：语言学习 (language learning) 和语言习得 (language acquisition)。就学英语而言，“学习”是指对英语语音、词汇、语法、篇章、修辞等各个层次的知识进行系统学习；“习得”在这里是指在英语环境中（听、说、读等）和在英语交际中，不知不觉地掌握英语的全过程。要学好英语，两者不可偏废。那么“学习”与“习得”的矛盾如何处理？关于这一点，各家见解就不同了。作者只能根据自己的教改实践谈谈自己成功的经验。

作者于 1992 年对原中南工业大学非英语专业 92 级教改班，1993 年对英语专业 93 级以及 1996~1998 年对长沙大学中文 96 级 1、2 班进行三轮教改实验。

实验是成功的，为此有幸获得 1997 年湖南省教学改革成果二等奖。教改总的指导思想是：“以结构系统为先导，以功能项目为纲目，以输入强化为手段”。本书就是“以结构为先导”的实际教学内容。1985~1986 年，作者应聘为湖南省民盟主办之中山业余大学的董事，为考研和出国的成年人开设英语课，以此为内容，使 90% 以上的成年人如愿以偿。

本书能写成，一则靠外语界前辈的指引，一则靠上述单位负责人开辟教改园地。同时，在编写过程中，还依靠萧公进行电脑排版，梁锦、萧芑进行练习编排，段承贵、刘彬进行文字校对。在此专肃鸣谢。如前所述，本书只是教学内容的实录，并非语法大全，书中疏漏和错误在所难免，恳请学界同仁和广大读者不吝赐教。

萧立明

2003 年 5 月

目 录

前言	III
第 1 章 基本句型	1
1.1 概述	1
1.2 基本句型要素	2
1.3 动词的分类	2
1.4 英语五大基本句型	3
1.5 基本句型的转换	4
1.6 英语句子的运动形式	4
1.7 英语句子的分类	5
第 2 章 常用句型	7
2.1 概述	7
2.2 I Φ 型(SV)	8
2.3 L型(SVC)	9
2.4 T1型(SVOn&pro.)	11
2.5 T2型(SVOdo)	13
2.6 T3型(SVO to do)	13
2.7 T4型(SVO-ing)	15
2.8 T5型(SVO that-从句)	16
2.9 T6型(SVO wh-从句)	17
2.10 D1型(SVoOn.)	18
2.11 D5型(SVoO that-从句)	19
2.12 D6型(SVoO wh-从句)	20
2.13 V2型(SVOC do(不带 to 的不定式))	20
2.14 V3型(SVOC to do)	21
2.15 V4型(SVOC-ing)	23
2.16 V8型(SVOC -ed)	23

2.17	X1 型(SVOC n.)	24
2.18	X7 型(SVOC adj.).....	25
2.19	X9 型(SVOC prep.)	26
2.20	常用句型小结.....	26
第 3 章	主从复合句	28
3.1	引言.....	28
3.2	名词从句.....	28
3.2.1	that-从句的用法	29
3.2.2	wh-从句的用法.....	31
3.3	定语从句.....	32
3.4	状语从句.....	36
3.4.1	时间状语从句.....	36
3.4.2	地点状语从句.....	40
3.4.3	原因状语从句.....	40
3.4.4	条件状语从句.....	41
3.4.5	让步状语从句.....	43
3.4.6	目的状语从句.....	45
3.4.7	结果状语从句.....	46
3.4.8	程度状语从句.....	46
3.4.9	比较状语从句.....	47
3.4.10	比例状语从句.....	48
3.4.11	方式状语从句.....	48
3.4.12	选择状语从句.....	49
第 4 章	句子的并列与衔接	50
4.1	引言.....	50
4.2	并列.....	50
4.3	衔接.....	54
4.4	衔接词语的分类.....	57
4.5	多功能连接词 and 的衔接作用	58

第 5 章 特殊句型	61
5.1 引言	61
5.2 关于 SVA 和 SVOA 句型	61
5.3 使役结构	61
5.4 It 句型	63
5.5 There be 句型	64
5.6 非生命主语句	66
5.7 特殊否定句	67
5.8 特殊比较句	70
5.9 特殊感叹句	71
第 6 章 多词动词句	74
6.1 引言	74
6.2 MV1 多词动词	74
6.3 MV2 多词动词	76
6.4 MV3 多词动词	77
6.5 MV4 多词动词	78
6.6 MV5 多词动词	78
6.7 MV6 多词动词	79
6.8 MV7 多词动词	79
6.9 MV8 多词动词	81
6.10 MV9 多词动词	81
6.11 MV10 多词动词	82
第 7 章 句子的压缩	83
7.1 引言	83
7.2 并列句的压缩	83
7.3 名词从句的压缩	85
7.4 定语从句的压缩	86
7.5 状语从句的压缩	89
7.6 并列句和主从复合句的特殊压缩	93

第 8 章 常见的句法错误	95
8.1 引言	95
8.2 主谓不合	95
8.3 称代错格	97
8.4 照应不妥	99
8.5 比较失调	101
8.6 词序不顺	102
8.7 前后矛盾	105
8.8 分离无依	107
8.9 苟简残缺	109
8.10 堆砌费解	110
8.11 省略不当	112
第 9 章 辞达五要则	114
9.1 引言	114
9.2 思想统一	114
9.3 结构紧凑	116
9.4 意思确切	117
9.5 中心突出	119
9.6 字音悦耳	121
第 10 章 篇章结构	123
10.1 引言	123
10.2 分类展发(Classification Development)	124
10.3 时序展发 (Chronological Development)	125
10.4 空间展发 (Spatial Development)	126
10.5 定义展发(Definition Development)	127
10.6 举例展发(Exemplification Development)	128
10.7 比较展发(Comparison Development)	129
10.8 对比展发(Contrast Development)	129
10.9 因果展发(Cause-Effect Development)	130

附录一 分类练习	132
Section One	132
Section Two	153
Section Three	189
Section Four	220
Section Five	228
附录二 参考答案	251
Section One	251
Section Two	272
Section Three	273
Section Four	273
Section Five	273

第1章 基本句型

1.1 概述

当代语言学认为，任何一种语言的结构都是有层次的。按照结构语言学，句层是核心层；按照交际语言学，信息交流的实现靠组成句子。英语句子是以动词为核心而构成的。这一点跟汉语有很大区别，因为汉语的结构可以说是“积字成句，积句成章”（刘勰：《文心雕龙·章句》）。我们来看看一些汉语的常用句：

地大。

物博。

中国地大物博。

价廉。

物美。

他们的货价廉物美。

如果用英语来表达上述汉语句子的意思，就要以动词为核心来组成句子：

The territory is large.

The natural resources are rich.

China is large in territory and rich in natural resources.

(China has a large territory and abounds in natural resources.)

They are cheap.

Their goods are nice.

Their goods are nice but cheap.

(They have nice but cheap goods.)

英语句子以动词为核心，通过词与词之间的关系来生成和转换句子。这五

种关系为:

主谓关系、补足关系、动宾关系、修饰关系、并列关系。五种关系中,主谓关系是最根本的;由此构成英语的五大基本句型。以基本句型为基础,英语句子有两种运动形式:一是句子本身的变化;一是句子成分的变化。两种运动形式导致英语句子的扩展、压缩和省略,从而生成和转换出常用句型、复合句、并列句、并列复合句以及形形色色的特殊句型。因此,我们学习英语,要从基本句型开始。以主谓关系为基础,英语句子的最基本形式可以用一个公式来表示:

$$S = Nph + Vph.$$

(S 代表句子, Nph 代表名词短语, Vph 代表动词短语。)

单个名词或代词可以视为一个“名词短语”;单个动词也可以视为一个“动词短语”。但在多数情况下,名词和动词常附带其他成分,因此,我们把公式写成:句子=名词短语+动词短语。

1.2 基本句型要素

在上一节谈到,英语句子的动词短语(Vph)可以是单个动词,而在多数情况下,动词附带其他成分,才能构成一个完整的句子。所以英语的名词短语加上动词短语及附带成分就构成英语中为数不多的句型模式,即句型,组成这些为数不多的英语基本句型的成分就是基本句型的要素。英语基本句型按句子成分来划分,有四大要素:

- 主语(用 S 表示);
- 谓语(用 V 表示);
- 宾语(用 O 表示);
- 补语(用 C 表示)。

1.3 动词的分类

英语中,并不是每一个句子都要求四大要素俱备。一个句子需要哪几个要

素，这完全取决于谓语动词的词性。传统语法按词性将动词分成两大类：

不及物动词(用 vi. 表示)；

及物动词(用 v.t. 表示)。

其实，按照二分法，可以将两大类动词再细分。不及物动词又细分为不完全及物动词(需带补语)和完全不及物动词(无需带补语)。及物动词又细分为不完全及物动词(需带宾补)和完全及物动词(无需带宾补)。完全及物动词再细分为单宾语及物动词(只带一个宾语)和双宾语及物动词(可带两个宾语，即一个间接宾语和一个直接宾语)。这种分类对中国学生来说是十分重要的。为了让读者一目了然，现将上述分类列表如下：

Class(类别)		Examples (例词)
vi.	complete	swim
	incomplete	be
vt.	complete	search
		mono-complete
	incomplete	di-complete
		give
	force	

1.4 英语五大基本句型

按照上述动词的分类，可以进一步展开前面所列出的英语句型公式。换句话说，可以把上述公式(S=Nph + Vph)中的 Vph 视为一个可变项，因为有五类动词可以充当动词短语。英语基本句型就根据可变项所选定的动词而生成。因此，五类动词就产生五大基本句型：

SV 型，例如：

Fish swim.

鱼游。

SVC 型，例如：

He is a student.

他是个学生。

SVO 型，例如：

The cold wind searched all the streets.

寒风吹遍大街小巷。

SVoO 型, 例如:

He gave me a book.

他给我一本书。

SVOC 型, 例如:

They forced me to do it.

他们迫使我干这事。

1.5 基本句型的转换

上述五种基本句型都是肯定的、主动的陈述句, 可以转换成否定式、疑问式和被动式。这三种形式的转换靠英语的起动词(operator), 即传统语法所说的助动词和情态动词。起动词和主动词构成复合谓语。复合谓语有下列五种基本形式:

第一形: 情态动词 + 动词原形, 例如: can swim, should give 等。

第二形: have + 过去分词, 例如: have given, have searched 等。

第三形: be + 现在分词, 例如: is swimming, are searching 等。

第四形: be + 过去分词, 例如: is searched, are given 等。

第五形: do(did) + 动词原形, 例如: do swim, did come 等。

除第五形外, 前四种复合谓语可以随意合并, 而产生各种时态、语态、语气等, 例如, 我们将第一形和第二形合并, 就成了传统语法所说的将来完成时:

George will finish the book.

George has finished the book.

} George will have finished the book (by Friday).

关于时态、语态、语气等, 一般语法书都有详尽的描述, 我们在本书不作赘述, 只就其结构作上述归纳。

1.6 英语句子的运动形式

英语句子的运动形式有两种: 一是成分本身的变化, 一是成分位置的变化, 关于第二种运动形式, 有关内容分散在本书各章中。这里主要谈谈第一种运动形式, 以便为以下三章提供一个线索。

所谓句子成分本身的变化, 是指基本句型中五个要素的变化, 特别是动词

短语的变化。这些要素可以扩展、压缩或省略。扩展有三种途径：

并列；

嵌入；

替代。

扩展是随说话人的意图和句子的功能而进行的。例如 “He insisted on it.” (他坚持要那样)，如果没有上下文，意思就不明确。我们可以通过替代，扩展成意思更为明确的句子：

He insisted on going with us. (动名词替代了 it)

He insisted that he go with us. (名词从句替代了 it)

他坚持要同我们一块去。

无论是扩展还是压缩或省略，都是修辞和文体的要求，例如，在日常口语中，我们常用复合句：

People say that he has become a millionaire.

据说他成了百万富翁。

而在报刊上看到的或在新闻广播听到的则是下面的句子：

He is said to be a millionaire.

He is reportedly a millionaire.

我国传统文论有一条作文原则，即“文贵变”。一篇文章如果是采用清一色的基本句型，那就太枯燥无味了。英语也是如此，讲话和作文也强调句型多变。因此，掌握句子的运动规律是十分必要的。在以下几章中都会讨论这些问题。

1.7 英语句子的分类

英语句子从五大基本句型出发，进行扩展、压缩和省略，生成或转换出各种各样的句子。人们为了便于学习，常从不同的角度来对句子进行归类。例如，从句子结构来考虑，句子可以分为：

简单句；

复合句；

并列句；

并列复合句。

又如，从句子的功能来考虑，句子可以分为：

陈述句；

疑问句；

祈使句；

感叹句。

如果从修辞的角度来考虑，英语句子可以作如下分类：

(1) 掉尾句(periodic sentence)，即句子的主要成分到句尾才完整的句子。这样的句子语气严肃，常使读者悬念下文，例如：

In comparison with the people he has always known, Louisa must seem, for all her generosity and laughter and affection, peculiarly uncertain of herself, peculiarly hostile and embattled.

跟他平时熟悉的人相比，路易莎尽管气量大，兴致高，和谐可亲，却显得对自己特别缺乏信心，对别人特别怀有敌意和戒心。

(2) 松散句(loose sentence)，即主要成分在句子前部就已完成，而句子仍然延续下去的句子。这种句子跟掉尾句恰恰相反，语气舒缓，如行云流水，例如：

I have a friend, a good-natured boy who was always hanging around the club in which I worked in the old days, who, has just returned from Algeria, with a recurring, debilitating fever, and minus one eye.

我有一个朋友，是个敦厚的青年，以前老在我工作的那个夜总会兜来兜去，他刚从阿尔及利亚归来，少了一只眼睛，还染上热病，这热病时常发作，使他身体日渐虚弱。

(3) 平衡句(balanced sentence)，即以相同的结构来表达相对意思的句子。这种句子构成警策语气，又有较好的描绘效果，例如：

Winners never quit; quitters never win.

胜利者从不半途而废；半途而废者从不胜利。

在同一篇话语里，不可能都用一种句子，而应当坚持“文贵变”的原则。但是，按照文体的要求，总有一种占主导地位，这就形成了这一语篇的语言风格。

第2章 常用句型

2.1 概述

在第1章,根据五类动词展开英语的句型公式,得出五个分公式:SV, SVC, SVO, SVoO, SVOC。为了方便起见,我们分别用英语字母来代替五个分公式的动词,称其为字母码(与《朗文当代英语词典》采用的编码一致):

SV 中的动词(即完全不及物动词)以 I 表示;

SVC 中的动词(即不完全及物动词)以 L 表示;

SVO 中的动词(即单及物动词)以 T 表示;

SVoO 中的动词(即双宾语及物动词)以 D 表示;

SVOC 中的动词(即不完全及物动词)以 V 或 X 表示。V 表示宾补为动词非谓语形式,也就是动词不定式、现在分词、过去分词;X 表示宾补是名词、形容词、介词短语。

现在,又将五个分公式中的 O 和 C 视为可变项;因为按照英语的语法和惯用法,这两个可变项可以用一些语言单位来充当,而构成英语的常用句型。那么,这些语言单位有多少呢?不多,只有十个。下面再编一个数字码(也与《朗文当代英语词典》一致)

① 表示动词后面不跟任何其他成分而构成句子;

1. 表示 O 或 C 是名词或代词;
2. 表示 O 或 C 是不带 to 的动词不定式;
3. 表示 O 或 C 是带 to 的动词不定式;
4. 表示 O 或 C 是-ing 从句,即动名词或现在分词;
5. 表示 O 或 C 是 that-从句;
6. 表示 O 或 C 是 wh-从句;
7. 表示 C 是形容词;
8. 表示 C 是-ed 从句,即过去分词;
9. 表示 C 是介词短语。

第1章讨论过,英语是以动词为核心来组成句子的。所以,英语的词法、句法、惯用法以及修辞往往随动词展开。上述字母码和数字码进行合理搭配,

就构成英语的 18 种常用句型。在我国流行的《朗文现代英汉双解词典》(1988 年版)就是按照这套编码系统来指导我们使用英语常用句型的。现将编码与例句展示如下:

Code(编码)	Examples(例句)
IΦ	Fish swim.
L1-9	He is rich (... in good health).
T1	The wind searched all the streets.
T2	He helped wash the dishes.
T3	They attempted to climb the mountain.
T4	I enjoyed reading novels.
T5	He said that he would come.
T6	They asked what they could do.
D1	He gave me a book.
D5	He informed me that I should attend the meeting.
D6	They asked me what they should do.
V2	I saw the man cross the street.
V3	He asked me to go with him.
V4	I saw the man crossing the street.
V8	He had his hair cut.
X1	They elected him president.
X7	We painted the door yellow.
X9	I found him in good health.

对于中国学生来说,常用句型是十分重要的。因为常用句型不仅涉及语法和语义的方方面面,也涉及惯用法和修辞的方方面面。要把英语学通,先要在常用句型上下功夫,才能在听、说、读、写、译等方面提高运用英语的能力。下面就按照上述的编码,对英语常用句型的结构形式和句法特点进行详细讨论。

2.2 IΦ型(SV)

例如:

Fish swim.

英语中，所有完全不及物动词都可以用这种句型。这种句型极为简单，因此往往被人们忽视。其实，在一种语言中，结构简单的，表达的意思却很丰富，汉语的四字成语就是一个例子。英语亦然，很多地道的英语句子就是用这种简单的句型。下面略举数例：

It breaks.	天亮了。
Every minute counts.	分秒必争。
It doesn't matter.	没关系。
It depends.	这要看情况而定。
My shoes hurt.	我的鞋太紧，使我很难受。
Fish can't keep.	鱼不保鲜。
This farm doesn't pay.	这农场不合算。
Her eyes spoke.	她眉目传情(频送秋波)。
The clock doesn't go.	钟坏了。
The machine is running.	这台机器在运转。
Your idea doesn't work.	你的想法行不通。
Now, Tom is leading.	现在汤姆一路领先。

从例句可以看出，所有的动词都是常用动词。同时有些动词既可以用作不及物动词，又可以用作及物动词。对于中国学生来说，平时学习英语，不要死记单词，而要多运用，多参考原文词典或双解字典，这样才能逐步把握常用动词的语义和用法。

2.3 L 型(SVC)

例如：

He is a student.

这种句型在传统语法中称为“系表结构”，即系动词 + 表语。句型中的 C 除了不带 to 的动词不定式(口语例外)，可以是数字码中所列的任何语言单位，例如：

L1: She became queen.	她成了皇后。
L3: The problem is how to begin.	问题是如何着手。
L4: The film is thrilling.	这部片子很惊险。

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| L5: The trouble is that you are penniless. | 问题是你身无分文。 |
| L6: That is what I want to say. | 我只想说这些。 |
| L7: She became famous. | 她成名了。 |
| L8: The window is broken. | 窗户破了。 |
| L9: Their success is out of the question. | 他们不可能成功。 |

英语学习者受传统语法的影响,以为这种句型就是系动词 to be 加表语;同时又容易把系动词局限于 to be, to become, to seem。其实,当代英语中,能用于这种句型的系动词很多。为了方便读者记忆,我们在本书将所有系动词分为两大类:

第一类是表示属性的;

第二类表示度量衡的。

表示属性的又分成三组。

第一组表示某人或某物本来具有的特性,例如:

appear, be, feel, look, make, seem, smell, taste, sound, strike, wear 等。

第二组表示某人或某物保持某种属性,例如:

keep, remain 等。

第三组表示某人或某物从一种特性变为另一种特性,例如:

become, break, burn, come, fall, go, grow, prove, run, turn 等。

下面就初学者不太熟悉的略举几例:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------|
| The room strikes wet and cold. | 这房间又冷又潮。 |
| Two and two make four. | 二加二等于四。 |
| She has worn well. | 她看上去很年轻。 |
| The box broke open. | 盒子裂开了。 |
| His jokes fell flat. | 他的笑话没产生效果。 |
| The potatoes have burnt black. | 土豆烧焦了。 |

表示度量衡的系动词有 come, cost, fall, go, last, live, march, measure, ride, take, travel, wait, work, weigh 等。使用这些动词时,要注意以下三点:

第一,句型中的 C 只能是名词,例如:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------|
| He walked ten days. | 他步行了十天。 |
| The temperature fell four degrees. | 温度下降了四度。 |
| We have waited twenty minutes. | 我们已等了二十分钟。 |

The book costs ten dollars. 这本书值十美元。

第二，上述动词中，cost, last, take 三个动词可以从 SVC 型转化为 SVoO 型，即 D1 句型，语义稍有变化，例如：

The book costs ten dollars. 这本书值十美元。

The book costs me ten dollars. 这本书花去我十美元。

The food will last a month. 食物足够吃一个月。

The food will last them a month. 食物够他们吃一个月。

The journey from York to London will take two hours.

从约克到伦敦要两小时。

The journey from York to London will take us two hours.

我们从约克到伦敦要两小时。

第三，动词 go 构成英语中一种特殊的句型，即 L4(go + -ing)，例如：

Tomorrow, we'll go shopping. 明天我们上街买东西。

They will go camping. 他们要去野营。

Once a week he goes fishing. 他每周去钓一次鱼。

In summer we always go swimming. 夏天我们常去游泳。

2.4 T1 型(SVOn&pro.)

例如：

We study English.

We study it.

这种句型是英语最常用句型，几乎所有及物动词都可以用这种句型。换句话说，不完全及物动词首先要考虑是完全及物动词。但结构一变化，语义有时会发生变化。为了说明这一点，我们举下列几组例句：

I always call him. 我经常呼他。

I call him "Fatty". 我叫他“胖胖”。

I left her. 我离开了她。

I left the door open. 我让门开着。

They caught the thief.
他们抓住了那个小偷。

The old man caught ten boys stealing apples.
老人撞见 10 个男孩在偷苹果。

英语很多成语也是由这种句型构成的，特别是那些常用动词，如 make, do, take 等。下面列举数例：

make an answer	回答
make one's appearance	露面
make a beginning	开始
make a change	产生变化
make a face	做鬼脸
make hay	利用机会
make money	发财
make trouble	捣乱

do one's best	尽力而为
do good	有益
do the spadework	打基础
do wonders	创奇迹

take the air	散步
take the back seat	退下来
take a chance	碰运气
take effect	生效
take place	发生
take root	扎根

此外，运用这种句型时，还要注意以下两点：

第一，当宾语(O)是反身代词时，要注意语义的变化，例如：

He cut himself. 他自己伤害自己。
 He hugs himself. 他沾沾自喜。
 He pretended to be American, but betrayed himself when speaking.
 他冒充美国人，但一开口就露了马脚。

第二，有些不及物动词后面跟同根名词(cognate)便成了及物动词，例如：

She laughed a merry laugh. 她笑得很开心。
 She smiled her thanks. 她微笑着以示感谢。

2.5 T2 型(SVOdo)

例如：

I helped clean the window.

这种句型的宾语是不带 to 的动词不定式。目前，用于这种句型的动词不多，只有 hear, help, leave, let, make 等，例如：

We helped wash the dishes. 我们帮着洗碟子。

Hold it fast and don't let go. 握紧，别松手。

The children are making believe that they are princes and princesses.

这些孩子假扮他们是王子和公主。

2.6 T3 型(SVO to do)

例如：

I want to work here.

这种句型极为普遍，其特点就是以带 to 的动词不定式作宾语。由于不定式所表示的动作一般是尚未进行的，所以用于这种句型的动词一般表示“欲”、“想”、“决定”、“计划”、“试图”、“同意”、“拒绝”、“开始”、“尽力”、“发誓”等，例如：afford, agree, apply, arrange, ask, attempt, begin, cease, choose, claim, continue, commence, dare, decide, decline, desire, determine, endeavor, expect, fear, forget, guarantee, hope, intend, learn, like, love, manage, mean, need, offer, pledge,

prefer, prepare, pretend, profess, promise, propose, purpose, refuse, regret, resolve, remember, say, seek, start, swear, threaten, try, undertake, venture, volunteer, vow, want, wish 等。

学习这种句型，最好以词义来记住上述动词。记住这些动词，不仅有助于灵活运用句型，还可以使我们掌握另一种惯用句型。当这些动词转换成名词或相应的派生名词时，其修饰语往往也是不定式，而不是其他动词非谓语形式或介词短语。因此，熟悉这些动词，可以达到一举两得的效果。下面试举几例：

We agreed to differ.

我们求同存异。

An agreement to differ is better than a noisy quarrel.

求同存异总比吵架好。

She wishes to earn her own living.

她想自食其力。

She expressed her wish to earn her own living.

她表达了要自食其力的愿望。

He decided to resign.

他决定辞职。

His decision to resign was welcomed by his opposites.

他做出辞职的决定是反对派所欢迎的。

They attempted to climb the big mountain.

他们想登上那座大山。

Their attempt to climb the big mountain was made yesterday.

他们要登那座大山的决定是昨天作出的。

学习这种句型还要注意一个问题。其中有一些动词(如 forget, remember)后面既可以接不定式，又可以接动名词(-ing)，即下一节将要讨论的 T4 句型。这两种句型在语义上有较大差别，例如：

I'll remember to post the letter.

我要记得去寄这封信。

I remember posting the letter.

我记得已寄出了这封信。

其中还有些动词(如 like, cease), 也可以用上述两种句型, 但语义只有小小的差异, 例如:

I like swimming, but I don't like to swim in the pool.

我喜欢游泳, 但我不喜欢在游泳池里游泳。

从上述例句可以看出, 如果动词后面接动名词, 则表示某种习惯; 如果接不定式, 则表示对某事在某种场合下的好恶。如何把握这两种句型, 还没有绝对可靠的规则, 这就靠学习者在平时的语言实践中多留意, 多比较, 逐步加以掌握。

2.7 T4 型(SVO-ing)

例如:

I enjoyed reading books.

这种常用句型的特点是以动名词(-从句)作宾语。句型结构并不难, 但是涉及英语惯用法, 常使中国学生大感头疼; 因为用于这种句型的动词不便于记忆, 又无规则可循。美国托福试卷和国内其他试卷上常有这类试题。所以, 很多人创造一些方法来帮助学习者记住这类动词, 例如, 港台有人用“霉咖啡不是”这样一个口诀来帮助记忆。其实, 只要把用于 T3 句型的动词与之对照, 平常多加以运用, 把下列动词的用法掌握也不难。它们是:

acknowledge, admit, advise, anticipate, appreciate, avoid, bear, can not resist, cannot stand, consider, contemplate, defend, defer, delay, deny, detest, dislike, enjoy, ensure, escape, evade, excuse, facilitate, fancy, favor, fear, finish, forbid, forget, give up, can not help, imagine, include, keep (on), leave off, mind, miss, need, postpone, practice, put off, quit, remember, resent, risk, stop, suggest, try, understand, want

在运用这种句型时, 还需要注意如下两点。

第一, 有些动词, 如 forget, remember 等, 既可以用于 T3 句型, 也可以用于 T4 句型。我们应当注意两者之间的语义差别(详见上一节)。

第二，need 和 want 两个动词后的动名词含有被动意思，例如：

My house needs mending.

我的房子需要修缮。

He wants a good beating.

他需要挨一顿狠揍。

2.8 T5 型(SVO that-从句)

例如：

He said that he would leave as soon as possible.

这种句型是由直接陈述句转化而成的间接陈述句，例如，上述句子就是由 He said: "I'll leave as soon as possible." 转成。因此，我们可以认为凡是能引导直接陈述句的英语动词都可以用于这种句型。这类常用动词有：acknowledge, admit, ask, believe, confess, declare, demand, demonstrate, deny, desire, doubt, expect, explain, fear, feel, hear, hope, imagine, insist, intend, know, mean, mind, notice, perceive, prefer, propose, recommend, report, request, require, say, see, show, specify, suggest, suppose, think, understand, urge, wish, wonder 等。

这种句型有很多特点，我们将在第 3 章进行系统讨论，这里从常用句型的角度，着重谈四点。

第一，用于这种句型的部分动词，要求从句的语气随文体变化而变化。在口语中，从句中往往出现 should，但是在正式书面语中，从句的谓语动词必须用动词原型，其否定式是 not 直接跟动词原型。这些动词有：ask, command, decide, demand, desire, insist, prefer, propose, recommend, request, require, suggest 等，例如：

The doctor suggested that he give up smoking.

The doctor suggested that he not smoke.

医生建议他戒烟。

第二，当这些动词转化成名词之后，that-从句便成了同位语从句。这些同位语从句也必须按上述规则构成，例如：

The doctor made the suggestion that he give up smoking.

The doctor made the suggestion that he not smoke.

第三，在 I wish, I'd rather, It's (high) time 等主句后，从句一定要用虚拟语气：现在式要改为过去式；将来式要改为过去将来式，过去式要改为过去完成式，例如：

I wish that he would come tomorrow.

我希望他明天来。

I'd rather you didn't do it now.

我看你现在最好别做。

Mary wishes that she had studied law instead of history when she was in college.

玛丽想她在校时不学历史而学法律该多好。

第四，在一定的语境中，可以用 so 取代上文中的 that-从句。但用于这一情况的动词不多，主要是表示主观意见和看法的动词，例如：believe, expect, hear, hope, notice, say, see, suppose, think, wish 等。对于上述多数动词来说，so 即可以置于句首，也可以置于句尾。但如用 see, hear, notice 三个动词，则只能将 so 置于句首：

It threatens to rain.

看样子要下雨了。

I believe so / So I believe.

我看也是。

It is said our team has won.

听说我队获胜。

So I heard.

我也听说了。

2.9 T6 型(SVO wh-从句)

例如：

I don't know what I should do.

这种句型大多数由直接问句转换而成的间接问句，例如，“What should I do?”he asked 转化而成 He asked what he should do.由此可见，这种句型的特点是有疑问句构成的名词从句。用于这种句型的动词有：ask, believe, consider,

decide, discover, discuss, explain, find out, forget, guess, hear, imagine, inquire, know, learn, observe, perceive, remember, reveal, say, see, settle, tell, think, understand, wonder 等。

这种句型的另一个特点是：wh-从句可以简化为 wh-加不定式，例如：

I don't know what I should do —→ I don't know what to do.

我不知道该做什么。

I don't know which I should take —→ I don't know which to take.

我不知道取哪个好。

2.10 D1 型(SVoOn.)

例如：

He gave the boy a book.

这是由双宾语及物动词构成的句型。一般说来，前一个宾语指人，即间接宾语；后一个宾语指物，即直接宾语。但少数动词后面，两个宾语均为直接宾语。所以舍去其一，句子照样成立。为了说明这些变化，我们将双宾语及物动词分成三组来进行讨论。

第一组常用动词有：cause, give, lend, pass, read, send, tell, throw, wish, write 等。由这些动词构成的句子可以转化成 SVOA 句型，即：主语+谓语+宾语+介词短语。但是介词一律用 to，例如：

He gave the boy a book. —→ He gave a book to the boy.

他给那孩子一本书。

Tom passed Jack the ball. —→ Tom passed the ball to Jack.

汤姆把球传给杰克。

第二组常用动词有：buy, choose, cook, do, get, leave, make, order, reach, spare 等。由这些动词构成的句子也可以转化成 SVOA 句型，但介词只能是 for 而不可用 to，例如：

He bought the boy a book. —→ He bought a book for the boy.

他给那孩子买了本书。

The postman left us a letter. —→ The postman left a letter for us.

邮递员给我们留下一封信。

第三组常用动词比较少，主要有：ask, deny, grudge, save, strike 等。这一组双及物动词的特点是一般不转换成 SVOA 句型，因为动词后面的两个宾语都是直接宾语。正因为如此，任舍其一，句子照样成立，例如：

He asked me a question.	他问了我一个问题。
He asked me.	他问过我。
He asked a question.	他问了个问题。

2.11 D5 型(SVoO that-从句)

例如：

He warned me that I should not go.

同 T5 句型一样，这种句型也是由直接引语转化而来的；不同的是，这种句型带双宾语。用于这种句型的常用动词有：assure, convince, inform, remind, satisfy, teach, warn 等。记住这些动词有一个好处，因为多数动词可以转化成 SVOA 句型，而且介词都是用 of，例如：

He informed me that we would have a meeting tomorrow.

He informed me of the meeting tomorrow.

他通知我明天开会。

He warned the manager that they would be short of oil.

He warned the manager of the oil shortage.

他提醒公司经理说他们石油短缺。

I can hardly convince my wife that the game will be exciting.

I can hardly convince my wife of the exciting game.

我很难说服我妻子相信这场比赛会很精彩。

He assured us that he could do this work.

He assured us of his ability to do this work.

他向我们保证他有能力做这项工作。

2.12 D6 型(SVoO wh-从句)

例如:

We showed him how he should do it.

这种句型其实是 T6 型的一种变体, 其特点是动词带双宾语, 而且直接宾语是由疑问代词引导的名词从句。用于这种句型的动词为数不多, 只有: advice, demonstrate, inform, show, teach, tell 等。这种句型的 wh-从句也可以简化为 wh-加不定式, 例如:

We showed him how he should do it. —→ We showed him how to do it.

我们向他解释(给他示范)他该怎样做。

I advised her where she should stay. —→ I advised her where to stay.

我建议她应呆在何处为好。

2.13 V2 型(SVOC do(不带 to 的不定式))

例如:

I saw the man leave.

这种句型以及下面各节将要讨论的常用句型均由不完全及物动词构成, 也就是宾语后面都接宾语补语。V2 型的特点是: 宾语补语是不带 to 的不定式。为了学习的方便, 我们把用于这种句型的不完全及物动词分为三组。

第一组是表示各种感觉的动词, 如: feel, hear, listen to, look at, notice, observe, perceive, see, watch 等。请看下列例句:

I felt something touch my foot.

我感到什么东西碰了我的脚。

Did you notice me leave the house?

你没看到我离开了房子?

They watched the sun rise in the east.

他们观看了旭日东升。

第二组则为表示其他动作的动词, 如: bid, let, help, know, make 等。请看下列例句:

The teacher bade me come in.

老师叫我进去。

Come on! Let's go.

喂! 咱们走吧。

I have known him run faster than that.

我知道他能比这次跑得更快。

第三组是构成使役结构的动词 **have**，关于使役结构，我们在第 5 章再详细讨论。

学习这种句型，我们要注意以下两点。

首先，当句子转换成被动语态时，不能再带 **to** 的不定式，而要接带 **to** 的不定式，例如：

I saw the man cross the street. —→ The man was seen to cross the street.

其次，我们应当注意这种句型与 V4 句型在语义上的差别。一般说来，宾语补语如果是不带 **to** 的动词不定式，不定式所表示的动作已完成；而当宾语补语是 **-ing** 时，它所表示的动作正在进行，即未完成。为了说清这个差别，我们对上述例句略加发挥。设想你是一次车祸的目击者，交通警察请你作证，如果汽车开过来，受害者早已横过街道，是因心脏病突发而死，开车的人就没有直接责任，所以你该说：

I saw the man cross the street when the car came up.

相反，假设你认定开车人肇事，那么就该用 V4 型句子：

I saw the man crossing the street when the car came up.

请看，一字之差，谬以千里。因此，学习常用句型，要注意因结构不同而引起的语义差别。

2.14 V3 型(SVOC to do)

例如：

(a) I want him to go.

(b) I believe him to be a scholar.

这种句型很普遍，其结构同汉语常用句中的“兼语式”(如：我要他去)相似。这种句型的特点是：宾语补语是带 **to** 的动词不定式。我们从上面两个例

句可以看出，不定式有两种情况：(a)中的不定式是除 to be 以外的动词不定式；(b)中的不定式则只能是 to be。按照这种情况，我们应当将用语 V3 句型的动词分成两大组：

(a) 组有：allow, ask, bear, cause, challenge, command, compel, dare, decide, determine, encourage, entreat, expect, force, hate, help, implore, instruct, intend, invite, lead, leave, like, love, mean, oblige, order, permit, persuade, prefer, prepare, press, remind, request, teach, tell, tempt, trouble, want, warn, wish 等。

(b) 组有：believe, acknowledge, choose, consider, count, declare, deny, esteem, fancy, feel, find, imagine, judge, know, prove, realize, report, see, suppose, suspect, take, think, understand 等。

这种句型虽然跟汉语的“兼语式”相似，但哪些动词可以用，语义上面有何差别，还是问题。所以对中国学生来说，还是要多通过实践加以掌握。下面就(a)组动词举例：

Your words have decided me to help you.

你的一席话使我作出决定来帮助你。

I hate them to be troubled about trifles.

我不愿让琐事麻烦他们。

This difficulty challenges my mind to find an answer.

这一难题激励着我，使我设法去找答案。

I intend them to go with us.

我的意思是要他们同我们一道去。

The nurse is preparing the child to go to the hospital.

护士正在准备把孩子送往医院。

The warm sun tempted us to go swimming.

温暖的阳光吸引我们去游泳。

(b)组的动词大多数为用于 T5 型的动词。或者说，(b)组动词构成的句型是 T5 句型的简化式，例如：

I supposed that the newcomer was our teacher of English. —→

I supposed the newcomer to be our English teacher.

我想来者是我们的英语教师。

It is reported that he has become a millionaire. —→

He is reported to be a millionaire.

据说他成了百万富翁。

They suspected that he was the murderer. —→

They suspected him to be the murderer.

他们怀疑他是杀人凶手。

2.15 V4 型(SVOC-ing)

例如:

I saw the man leaving.

这种句型要与 V2 型进行对照才好掌握。两者之间的差别已在前面讨论过了, 在此不赘述。用于这种句型的动词也分为三组。第一组和第三组跟 V2 型动词相同; 而第二组则截然不同, 应作为学习的重点。为了学习的方便, 我们先将三组动词罗列如下:

第一组有: feel, hear, listen to, look at, notice, observe, perceive, see, watch 等。

第二组有: catch, find, get, keep, leave, set, start 等。

第三组只有一词: have(详见第 5 章“使役结构”)。

第二组动词用于这一句型时, 词义往往为引伸义或喻义, 学习者应当多加留意。现举几例如下:

The old man caught several strong boys stealing apples in his fruit garden.

老人撞见好几个身强力壮的男孩在他的果园里偷苹果。

Your remarks have set me thinking.

你那一席话引起我的深思。

Let's keep the ball rolling.

咱们继续干吧。

2.16 V8 型(SVOC -ed)

例如:

I heard my name called.

这种句型也由不完全及物动词构成, 其特点是: 宾语补语为-ed 从句(即传统语法中的所谓“过去分词”)。为了学习的方便, 我们将用于这种句型的动词

分成三组。

第一组有：feel, find, like, make, order, prefer, see, want, wish 等。

第二组有：get, have 两词。

第三组有：have 一词。

第二组和第三组的动词构成英语的“使役结构”(详见第 5 章“使役结构”)。这里，我们只就第一组动词举例如下：

Have you ever heard Italian spoken?

你听到过人家说意大利语吗？

I found the door locked.

我发现门上了锁。

I don't want any of you involved in the scandal.

我想你们任何人都不要牵涉到这一丑闻中去。

2.17 X1 型(SVOC n.)

例如：

We elected him monitor.

这种句型也是用不完全及物动词构成的，跟以下其他两种句型一样，由于宾语补语不是动词非谓语形式而是名词、形容词或介词短语，所以用 X 表示，以示区别。X1 型的特点是：宾语补语是名词。从上面的例句看，似乎也像汉语的“兼语式”；实际上有差别。英语是用名词直接做宾语补语，而汉语的“兼语式”需要两个动词，例如：“我们选他当班长。”这一点，中国学生要特别注意。如果随意套用汉语句型，就会说成：“We elected him to be monitor.”这种错误的英语句子。用于这种句型的动词有：appoint, call, crown, baptize, choose, christen, elect, designate, entitle, find, leave, make, name, nickname, style 等。

我们在运用这种句型时，还要注意一点。宾语补语往往是人的名称、职位或头衔。当职位或头衔是独一无二的时候，名词前面一般不用冠词，有时可以用所有格代词，例如：

They crowned him king.

他们推举他为王。

They elected Nixon president.

他们选尼克松当总统。

They appointed him chairman.

他们任命他为主席。

We elected him our monitor.

我们选他为我们的班长。

2.18 X7 型(SVOC adj.)

例如:

I found the box empty.

这种句型也由不完全及物动词构成,其特点是:宾语补语是形容词。用于这种句型的动词有: bake, beat, burn, color, cry, cut, drive, dye, fill, find, get, hammer, have, hold, keep, leave, lick, like, make, paint, push, render, see, set, turn, wash, wipe, wish 等。我们运用这些动词造句时要注意不要跟 V3 (b)型混淆。下面多举几例,供大家参考:

The sun has baked the ground hard.

太阳把地面晒得硬梆梆的。

Please boil my eggs hard.

请把我要吃的蛋煮老一点。

His master often beats him black and blue.

他老板常常把他打得青一块紫一块的。

Tom, your behavior has driven me mad.

汤姆,你这种行为真把我逼疯了。

He hammered the piece of metal flat.

他把那块金属板捶平了。

I'll have coffee black, please.

请给我倒杯不加牛奶的咖啡。

His fatness renders him unable to touch his toes.

他胖得不能弯腰去摸自己的脚趾。

The old man opened the cage and set the bird free.

老人打开笼子,把鸟放了。

The poor girl was so hungry that she licked the spoon clean.

那可怜的女孩饿极了，连汤匙也被她舔得干干净净。

2.19 X9 型(SVOC prep.)

例如：

I found him in good health.

这是英语最后一种常用句型，也由不完全及物动词构成，其特点是：宾语补语是介词短语。值得注意的是有些句子会产生歧义，例如：“I found him in the park.”既可以理解为“我在公园找到他。”也可理解为“我发现他在公园里。”在这种情况下，语义的确定全靠上下文。对初学者来说，最好尽量避免歧义句。用于这种句型的动词很多，有些含有“致使”的意思。这里略举几例：

At night, they set guards around the gate.

晚上，他们在大门四周布岗。

The news set the family into great excitement.

这消息使一家人非常兴奋。

The accident drove her out of senses.

这事故使她失去理智。

He pushed his way to the front of the crowd.

他挤到人群的前面。

2.20 常用句型小结

英语听、说、读、写四种基本技能的培养都离不开常用句型。然而为什么很多中国学生对常用句型往往只有似曾相识之感，而无驾轻就熟之功呢？原因也许很多，但笔者认为，这主要是英语学习环境和学习方法造成的。很多中国学生学英语就靠几本教科书，语言实践不多。加上不少人以为掌握一定数量的词汇，懂得语法规律，就可以精通英语，于是刚刚入门，就去啃原著，结果难句既不中听，又不上口，学不了，半途而废。语言学习必须循序渐进。只有将基础打得十分牢固，由浅入深，才能逐步做到出口成章，下笔成文。在结束本

章之前，就常用句型的问题，再补充几点看法。

首先，掌握好常用句型，英语基本技能就得以加强，英语表达也就灵活多样。以动词 **decide** 为例，句型熟悉，遣词造句可以信手拈来。一句话就会有多种表达形式：

He decided the thing / it. (T1 型)

He decided to do it. (T3 型)

He decided me to do it. (V3 型)

He decided on doing it. (T4 型)

He decided that he do it. (T5 型)

He decided what he should do. (T6 型)

其次，掌握好常用句型，可以丰富语义知识。在本章我们已学到，一些极平常的词，用于不同的句型，语义就会发生变化。结构与语义相结合，英语就越学越精了。例如，要表达“我认为英语并不难学”这个意思，你可以用下列任何一种句子：

I don't $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{think} \\ \text{consider} \\ \text{feel} \\ \text{believe} \end{array} \right\}$ that English is too difficult.

I don't $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{find} \\ \text{call} \\ \text{regard} \end{array} \right\}$ English a very hard language .
a very difficult language.
as a very hard language.

最后，我们必须指出，掌握好常用句型，就可以做到泾渭分明，很少犯张冠李戴的错误。因此，在做托福试题或其他结构试题时，你就不会再像过去那样，去冥思苦想那些语法条文，常常会有迎刃而解的感觉。总之，常用句型是英语入门的基础，也是衡量一个人英语是否学到家的标志；因此，无论初学者，还是有一定英语水平的人，都应当在这方面下功夫。

第 3 章 主从复合句

3.1 引言

我们在第 1 章已讨论过，英语句子的运动形式主要有三种：并列、嵌入和替代。我们将在第 4 章讨论并列，本章着重讨论嵌入和替代。所谓嵌入就是将一个短语或句子插入到另一个短语或句子中去，从而使句子扩展。先来看下面三个句子：

I chased the cat.	我追猫。
The cat chased the rat.	猫追老鼠。
The rat ate the cake.	老鼠吃了蛋糕。

运用英语结构的嵌入法，我们可以将第三句嵌入第二句，再将嵌好的句子嵌入到第一句，从而构成一个主从复合句：

I chased the cat that chased the rat that ate the cake.

所谓替代，就是用一個短语或一个句子来替代基本句型中的主语(S)、宾语(O)、补语(C)或状语(A)。我们在第 2 章讨论的常用句型中，T5, T6, D5, D6 等，就是用名词从句来替代名词作宾语。凡由句子来替代上述主要句子成分而扩展的句子就是主从复合句。

主从复合句由两大部分组成：主句和从句。英语的从句有三种：凡能替代名词而充当主语、宾语、补语以及同位语的，称为名词从句。凡能替代形容词，用来修饰和限制名词或代词的，称为定语从句(或形容词从句)。凡能替代副词，用来修饰和限制动词、形容词或副词的，称为状语从句(或副词从句)。

本章按照新体例对上述三种从句进行讨论。

3.2 名词从句

名词从句可用来作主语，故称为主语从句；也可用作宾语，故称宾语从句；也可用作补语(传统语法称表语)，故称补语从句；还可用作同位语，故称同位

语从句。从结构来看，名词从句分为两种。一种由连接词 **that** 引导，现代语法称为 **that-从句**。一种由 **what(ever)**, **how(ever)**, **which(ever)**, **who(ever)**, **whom(ever)**, **why**, **when(ever)**, **whether**, **if** 等来引导，现代语法称 **wh-从句**。两种名词从句的用法各有特色，下面进行系统讨论。

3.2.1 that-从句的用法

我们在本书第2章讨论的 T5 句型和 D5 句型都涉及到 **that-从句**。不过，在这两种句型中，**that-从句**都用作宾语。除作宾语外，**that-从句**还可以用作主语、同位语、补语、介词宾语。我们在此不按一般语法书将其作用一一分述，而只就整个 **that-从句**的用法特点作一个归纳。

第一，正如我们在第2章讨论的那样，在 **ask**, **decide**, **demand**, **desire**, **insist**, **order**, **propose**, **recommend**, **request**, **require**, **suggest** 等后面，**that-从句**的谓语动词一定要用动词原形构成虚拟语气。但是，这只是指标准书面语而言。国外的英语考试(如托福)和国内一些英语级别考试都有这个要求。实际上，在英语国家，在口语、非正式语体中，就没有这个限制，例如：

We insisted that he	{	should go.	(口语体)
		went.	(非正式体)
		go.	(正式体)

我们坚持要他去。

第二，当上述动词转化成名词后，如果后面接 **that-从句**构成的同位语，在标准书面语中，谓语也必须是动词原形，例如：

He proposed that the meeting be postponed until Monday.

He made a proposal that the meeting be postponed until Monday.

他提议会议延期到下周一。

第三，除了动词外，在 **advisable**, **imperative**, **important**, **essential**, **necessary**, **vital** 等形容词后面的 **that-从句**中，谓语动词也必须用动词原形构成虚拟语气，例如：

It was essential that the change be made.

作这种变动是必要的。

It was advisable that he hand in the paper on time.
他最好按时交论文。

第四, that-从句一般不跟介词(but, in, except 除外)搭配。因此, 当 that-从句替代与介词搭配的句子成分时, 应当删掉介词, 例如:

I am afraid	{	of fire.	(我怕火。)
		that the house would catch fire.	(我怕房子着火。)
He insisted	{	on it	(他坚持那样。)
		on doing it	(他坚持那样做。)
		that he do it.	(他坚持由他自己去做。)

另一方面, 因语义的要求, 必须保留介词时, 我们可以对句子进行调整。比如说, 可以将 that-从句用作同位语; 这时, 前面必须加名词, 例如:

The fire was due to the fact that someone had dropped a lighted cigarette.
这场大火是由于有人随地扔烟头而引起的。

前面提到, that-从句只可以同 in, but, except 三个介词搭配, 这里举几个例子:

Criticism is necessary in that it helps (to) correct our mistakes.
批评是必要的, 因为批评可以帮助我们改正错误。

There is no question but that he will succeed.
他会成功, 这是没有问题的。

He has no special faults except that he doesn't try hard to learn from others.
他没有什么特别的缺点, 只是不尽力向他人学习而已。

第五, 我们在第 2 章也已讨论过, 在 I wish...; I'd rather...; I'd sooner...; It is (high) time... 等主句后, that-从句一定要用虚拟语气。如果指将来, 从句一般用 would, could, might 等; 如果指现在, 一般用过去式; 如果指过去, 一般用过去完成式。例如:

I wish that you would come again tomorrow.
但愿你明天再来。

Now I wish that I were a bird so that I could fly to my hometown.
但愿现在我化羽为鸟, 飞抵故乡。

I'd rather you had finished it yesterday.
你昨天完成该多好。

第六，当 that-从句作宾语时，如果需要加强语气，那么就可以倒装，将整个从句置于句首。这里要特别注意倒装结构与插入语的区别。如果是插入语后置，句首没有引导词 that；同时，在口语中，插入语在句尾，一般要用升调，试比较两种结构如下：

That George was really afraid, I can't believe.
说乔治真害怕，我可不信。

He was really \ afraid, I / believe.
我看他真害怕。

3.2.2 wh-从句的用法

我们在第2章讨论过，T6句型和D6句型涉及到wh-从句，而且指出：that-从句是由直接陈述句转化而成的；wh-从句是由直接问句转化而成的。在运用这一从句时，我们要注意如下一些特点。

第一，特殊疑问句转化成名词从句时，要注意词序的变化。如果原疑问词是主语，词序一般不变；如果原疑问词不是主语，则要用陈述句的词序：

Who caused the accident ?(谁是肇事者?) ——>

Tell me who caused the accident, please.(告诉我谁是肇事者。)

第二，一般疑问句转化成wh-从句时，常用whether或if来引导，也要注意词序的调整。这里特别要注意两个引导词在用法上的差别。如果选用whether，那么与之搭配的or not(往往省略)可以和whether放在一起，也可以放在句尾。如果选用if，那么，or not就不可以和if放在一起，只能置于句尾。请看下列例句：

Have you met George?(你遇到乔治没有?) ——>

He asked me whether I had met George (or not).

He asked me whether or not I had met George.

He asked me if I had met George or not.

他问我是否遇到了乔治。

第三，除了 if 引导的名词从句外，wh-从句可以跟介词搭配。这也是 wh-从句与 that-从句的重要差别之一，例如：

It depends on whether you have money or not.

这要看你是否有足够的资金。

They couldn't agree about who should do the work.

谁去做这件工作，他们意见不一。

第四，如果需要加强语气，也可将 wh-从句置于句首，构成倒装结构。但由 if 引导的从句则不能置于句首构成倒装句，例如：

Whether we can help, I don't know.

能不能帮助你，我还不知道。

Which I should take, I can't decide.

该取哪个，我决定不了。

3.3 定语从句

定语从句由关系词引导，从句中的谓语动词的时态不像名词从句和状语从句那样受主句的约束，而随语义来确定，因此用法比较灵活。掌握定语从句的关键是关系词的选择。首先，我们来讨论一般选择。关系词的先行词可以表示人、物、时间、地点。这些先行词与关系词的搭配关系可以列表说明，一目了然。一般选择如下表所示(其中 Φ 表示关系词的省略)。

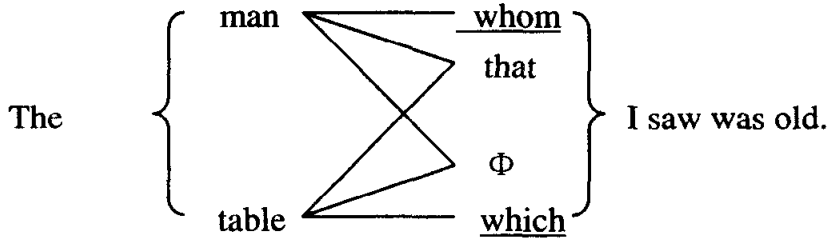
表一

The	{	man	}	<u>who</u>	} stayed in the hotel was old.
		table		that	
				<u>which</u>	

呆在厅里那人年纪很大了。

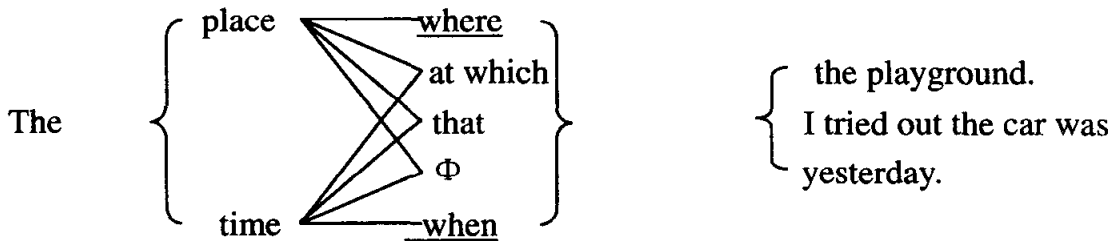
放在厅里那张桌子很旧了。

表二



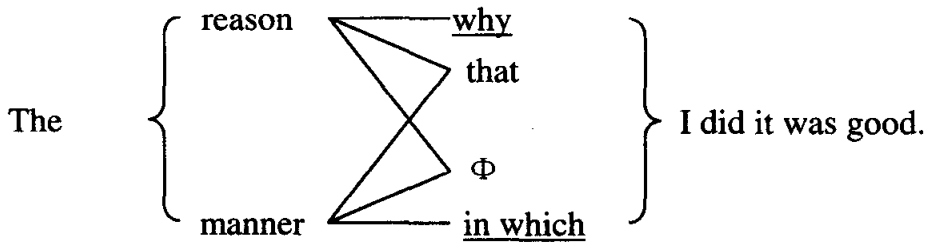
我所见到的那人年纪很大了。
我所见到的那张桌子很旧了。

表三



我试车的地点是操场。
我试车的时间是昨天。

表四



我那样做的理由是充分的。
我那样做的方式是好的。

上述一般选择在一般英语语法中都有详细描述。在此不赘述。这里要强调的是：在几种选择中要注意语体要求。按照标准书面语体的要求，最佳选择是下面加横线的关系词。

下面，我们再讨论关系词的特定选择。从上表我们可以看出，无论先行词指人还是指物，指地点还是指时间，指理由还是指方式，可供选择的关系词有多种。我们所谓特定的选择，是指在特定的情况下，只能选一种。为了叙述方便，现将几种情况分述如下。

第一, 在 *that* 与 *which* 之间的选择。

这两个关系词虽然都指物, 有时可以互用, 但在下列情况下, 只能用 *that* 而不能用 *which*:

(1) 在强调句中(即 *It is...that* 句型), 例如:

It was a key that I found in his pocket.

我在他口袋里只发现一把钥匙。

(2) 当先行词是不定代词时, 例如:

That is all that I know about the matter.

我对此事只了解这些。

(3) 当先行词被最高级形容词修饰时, 例如:

This is the most exciting game that I've ever seen.

这是我所见过的最激动人心的比赛。

(4) 当先行词被 *only, first, last, any, very* 等修饰时, 例如:

The first thing that we should do is to work out a plan.

我们该做的第一件事就是草拟一个计划。

(5) 当关系词在从句中充当补语(表语)时, 例如:

My typewriter is not the machine that it used to be.

我现在的打字机可不是过去那种样子了。

(6) 当关系词的介词后置时, 例如:

I read the book that you told me about.

我读了你谈到的那本书。

相反, 在下列情况下, 则只可用 *which* 而不可用 *that*:

(1) 当介词在关系词之前时, 例如:

I read the book about which you told me.

我读了你谈到的那本书。

(2) 在非限制性定语从句中, 例如:

I saw a film, which was about the cowboy.

我看过一部影片, 是讲那个牛仔的。

(3) 当关系词指前面的整个句子时, 例如:

He said he was ill, which was true.

他说他病了, 这是事实。

(4) 当关系词指先行词所包含的某种特征时, 例如:

He was dressed like an artist, which he was not.
他打扮得像个艺术家，其实他并无艺术家的素质。

第二，在 who 与 that 之间的选择。

这些关系词都可以指人，可以互用。但在特定情况下，只能选用其一。具体规则与上一节相同。这里只强调一点：当先行词既指人又指物时，就只能用 that，例如：

He talked brilliantly of the people and things that interested him.
他很风趣地谈论他感兴趣的人和事。

第三，在 whose 与 of which 之间的选择。

一般说来，whose 的先行词指人或有生命的东西，而 of which 的先行词指物。在当代英语中，whose 也可取代 of which 但在标准书面语体中，指物还是用 of which 为好。

第四，在 as 与 that 之间的选择。

在英语中，as 也是一个关系词，常与 that 混淆。我们应当记住这样一条规则：在 same 后面，两者都可以用。但在 so 和 such 后面，或关系词指整个句子时，就只能用 as 不可用 that，例如：

I lived in the same house $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{as} \\ \text{that} \end{array} \right\}$ he lives in.

我跟他住在同一栋房子。

Here is $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{so big a} \\ \text{such a big} \end{array} \right\}$ stone as no man can move.

这里有一块谁也搬不动的石头。

Helen was somewhat crazy, as all her acquaintances could see.
海伦有点疯狂了，所有的熟人都看得出来。

3.4 状语从句

状语从句是英语中种类最多，结构最复杂的从句。按照语义来划分，有如下 12 种：时间状语从句、地点状语从句、原因状语从句、条件状语从句、让步状语从句、目的状语从句、结果状语从句、程度状语从句、比较状语从句、比例状语从句、方式状语从句、选择状语从句。本书从结构的角度的角度，对状语从句分别进行讨论。

3.4.1 时间状语从句

时间状语从句一般用来修饰主句的动词，说明动作发生或进行的时间，或说明某种状态所处的时间。所以主句和从句的时间关系一定要搞清楚，才好选用适当的结构。我们可以将主句和从句之间的时间关系归纳成 6 种：一般时、同时、限制时、先后时、紧接时、起迄时。下面按顺序进行讨论。

第一，一般时。

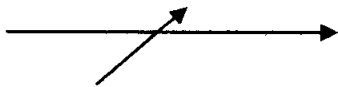
一般时由连接词 **when** 引导从句，主句和从句之间的时间关系有时不确定。正因为如此，主句和从句有时可以互换，例如：

When we were about to start, it began to rain.

We were about to start when it began to rain.

我们正要出发，天下起雨来。

用一般时还要注意一点：主句与从句的时间关系如果一个是一般时态，一个是进行体，往往含有“中断”的意思，即一般时态所表示的动作“中断”正在进行的动作，如下图所示：



但即使在这种情况下，主句和从句也可以互换，例如：

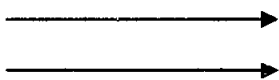
When we were talking about him, the teacher came in.

We were talking about the teacher when he came in.

我们正在谈论老师，老师却走进来了。(含有“说曹操，曹操到”的意思。)

第二，同时。

表示同时的时间状语从句由连接词 **while** 和 **as** 引导，说明主句和从句的动作或状态同时进行。在用 **while** 时，一般要求主句和从句的时态、体、语态一致，也就是结构一般对等。动作或状态的时间持续相等，如下图所示：



但用 **as** 引导从句时，则不要求结构对等。再者，如果从句是进行体，那么从句所表示的往往是主句的时间背景，如下图所示：



以下例句可以说明两者的基本用法：

While I was reading, she was singing.

我在读书时，她却在唱歌。

Maxwell laughed as he was speaking.

麦克斯威尔边说边笑。

We came home as the sun was setting in.

我们在太阳西沉时回家。

第三，限制时。

限制时状语从句的引导词有：**as long as**, **so long as**, **every(each) time**, **whenever** 等。这种时间状语从句用来限制主句动作或状态所经历的时间，例如：

You can go out $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{as long as} \\ \text{so long as} \end{array} \right\}$ you promise to be back before dark.

只要你答应天黑前回家，你可以外出。

Every time }
Whenever } I went to his house, he was out.
Each time }

我每次上他家，他都不在。

第四，先后时。

这种时间状语由 **before** 和 **after** 引导，前者表示先时，即主句的动作或状

态处于从句动作或状态之前；后者表示后时，即主句的动作或状态处于从句的动作或状态之后。不过，when 也可以引导这种时间状语，这时，主句和从句的时间关系靠动词的时态和体来表示，例如：

Before }
 When } they reached the station, the rain { (had) } stopped.
 had }

After the rain (had) stopped, they reached the station.

他们到达车站时，雨早已停了。

第五，紧接时。

紧接时状语从句表示主句的动作或状态紧接从句的动作或状态之后，或几乎同时。用于紧接时从句的连接词和词组很多。可按其结构分成三组：

第一组有：

as soon as, once, the moment, the instant 等。

第二组有：

instantly, immediately, directly 等。

第三组有：

no sooner...than; hardly...when/before; scarcely...when/before 等。

第一组和第二组的用法很简单，直接引导从句就可以了。中国学生特别要注意第三组的用法。第三组主要是靠句型结构表示时间关系。从结构上看，这里涉及两种句型：一种是比较状语从句；一种是时间状语从句。两种句型不可混淆。下面我们用各组引导词或词组表达同一个意思，以示结构上的类似和差别：

As soon as }
 Once }
 The moment }
 The instant } I came in, I saw the picture.
 Instantly }
 Immediately }
 Directly }

No sooner had I come in than I saw the picture.

Hardly } had I come in { when } I saw the picture.
 Scarcely } before }

我一走进来就看见那幅画。

第六，起迄时。

起迄时状语从句表示主句的动作或状态从什么时候开始到什么时候为止。引导这种从句的连接词有：since, till, until 等。鉴于用法不一，我们下面分别进行讨论。

连接词 since 常用于一般时和一般完成体，因为它表示的时间是从过去某一时刻起一直延续到现在，例如：

It is just a week since we arrived.

我们到达这里刚好一周。

I've been here since I arrived on Monday.

自星期一到达以来我们一直呆在这里。

They have studied English since they left the primary school.

他们自小学毕业以后就一直学英语。

连接词 till 和 until 同义，但在正式文体中，或当从句在句首时，则多用后者。在肯定句中，两个连接词表达的意思是：“直到……时为止”；而在否定句中，两个连接词表达的意思是：“直到……，才……”，例如：

Please wait till I come.

请等我来时再说。

Until he returns nothing can be done.

等他回来才能干。

值得中国学生注意的是，由 until 构成的否定句有三种结构形式：正常词序，倒装形式；强调形式。三种形式的结构不同，容易混淆。下面我们运用三种形式表达同一个意思，请注意结构上的差别：

The mother didn't leave the room until the child fell asleep.

Not until the child fell asleep did the mother leave the room.

It was not until the child fell asleep that the mother left the room.

直到孩子入睡后，母亲才离开房间。

3.4.2 地点状语从句

地点状语从句修饰主句的动词，说明动作发生的地点或状态所处的地点。其引导词有：*where, wherever* 等。古英语中的 *whither* 和 *whence* 现一般用于诗歌和正式文体。请看下列例句：

There lies a small town where the two rivers meet.

两江相汇处有一个小镇。

Let me accompany you to where you live.

让我陪你到府上去。

Wherever there is smoke, there is fire.

有烟必有火。(比较：无风不起浪)

Then whither he goes, thither let me go.

他去何方，我去何方。

Whence he came, thence he returned.

彼归来处。

3.4.3 原因状语从句

原因状语从句用来说明主句谓语动词所表示的动作或状态的原因，或说明主句内容的理由和根据。原因状语从句常用 *because, as, since* 引导。其中，*because* 表示直接原因，语气最强，与之相当的其他连接词有用于公文体的 *whereas*。连接词 *since* 表示推断理由，语气最弱，与之相当的其他连接词组有 *in that, seeing that, considering that* 等。上述连接词或词组的有关例句如下：

I am strict with you because I want you to make rapid progress.

我对你们严格是因为要让你们迅速进步。

Whereas the following incidents have occurred, the former contract ends with its effectiveness.

鉴于下列事故发生，原合同因此失效。

Since you can't answer the question, we'd better ask someone else.

既然你回答不了这个问题，我们最好去问别人。

As rain has fallen, the air is cooler.

由于下了雨，空气比较凉爽。

In that he is ill, he feels unable to do it.

他因病而感到做不了。

Seeing that she's lawfully old enough to get married, I don't see how you can stop her.

既然她已达到法定的结婚年龄，我认为你怎么也阻止不了她。

Considering that he's been studying English just for a year, he speaks it very well.

就他仅学了一年英语而论，他讲英语还是讲得不错了。

3.4.4 条件状语从句

条件状语从句用来表示主句中某一动作或状态所依据的条件。条件状语从句按其结构分为两大类：真实条件句和虚拟条件句。在这里按内容将真实条件句分为五种：一般条件句、规定条件句、反是条件句、惟一条件句和推理条件句，并一一加以讨论。

第一，一般条件句。

一般条件句由 if 引导；在疑问句中，多用 suppose, supposing 等引导；而在正式文体中，则常常用 given(that), granted (that), granting (that), assuming (that), presuming (that)等引导，例如：

If you tell me about it, I shall be able to decide.

如果你把事情告诉我，我就能作出决定。

Suppose (Supposing) it rains, what shall I do?

要是下雨，我们怎么办？

Given the same treatment again, he is sure to get well.

假如再得到同样的治疗，他一定会康复。

Granted that (Granting that) he has enough money to buy the house, id does not mean that he is going to buy it.

即使他有足够的钱买这栋房子，这也并不意味着他会买。

Assuming (Presuming) it rains tomorrow, what shall we do?

假设明天下雨，我们怎么办？

第二，规定条件句

除了用 if 外,规定条件句多由 provided (that), providing (that), on condition that 等引导;这时可以与 if 互换,例如:

$$\text{I will come} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{if} \\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{provided (that)} \\ \text{providing (that)} \\ \text{on condition that} \end{array} \right\} \end{array} \right\} \text{I am well.}$$

只要身体好,我就来。

这里请读者注意,当表示偶然情况、虚设和提防等意思时,只能用 if, in case 等,而不能由上述连接词或词组替换,例如:

What will happen if they see us ?

他们若看见我们,那会发生什么事?

He said he would punish me if I were lazy.

他说假如我懒惰,他就要惩罚我。

We'd better take the document along in case someone wants to hear its verbatim.

我们最好把文件带走,以备有人一字不差地听到原文。

Be quiet in case you should wake the baby.

轻点,以免吵醒孩子。

第三,反是条件句。

这种条件句是从句提出条件,然后指出如果不按条件去做,就会得出相反的结果。反是条件句由 unless 引导,例如:

Don't come unless I call you.

我不叫你,你别来。

A man does not know the difficulty of anything unless he does it personally.

事非经历不知难。

第四,惟一条件句。

这是一种加强语气的条件句,说明“只要”在某种“条件”下,就能得出某种结果。惟一条件句有四种形式,分别以例句说明如下:

If only I have another chance, I'll do it better.

只要再有机会,我就会做得好上加好。

He will only succeed if he does his best.

只要他尽力而为，他就会取得成功。

So long as we don't lose heart, we'll succeed.

只要不心灰意冷，我们就会成功。

One must sow before one can reap.

只有播种，才会有收获。

第五，推理条件句。

这种条件句是从句提出条件，由此而推出主句所包含的结果。引导推理条件句的连接词有：since, now that, inasmuch as 等，例如：

Since it can't be helped, let us leave it at that.

既然没有办法，就只好这样了。

Now that you have finished your work, you may go.

既然任务已完成，那你就可以走了。

Inasmuch as it is not my fault, I don't care.

既然不是我的错，我也就不介意了。

3.4.5 让步状语从句

让步状语从句是，首先承认一个事实，然后主句将意思一转，说出相反的情况。让步句按其结构分为三类：一般让步句，强式让步句，倒装让步句。现分述如下：

第一，一般让步句。

一般让步句由连接词 *though* 与 *although* (多用于书面语) 引导。主句可以加 *yet, still, nevertheless* 等副词。中国学生最容易将这种句型跟汉语句式“虽然……但是……”等同起来，结果造成英语句法上的错误，也就是错误地用 *but* 引导主句。这一点要特别注意。下面来学习几个例句：

Though it's hard work, I enjoy it.

虽然工作艰苦，我却干得痛快。

Although I believe it, (yet) I must consider.

虽然相信，但还得考虑一下。

They are generous though they are poor.

他们虽穷，却很慷慨。

Although he is a fool, I like him nevertheless.

虽然他很笨，然而我喜欢他。

第二，强式让步句。

这种让步句语气很强，多用于书面语，其结构大致可分为五种：

(1) 由 even if 或 even though 引导的；例如：

Even if you fail, you will have gained some experience.

即使失败，你也可以得些经验。

Even though it is difficult, I will try it.

即使很难，我也愿试试看。

(2) 由疑问词 + ever 引导的；例如：

Whatever I said, he'd disagree.

无论我说什么，他都不同意。

It has the same result, whichever way you do it.

不管你如何做，结果都一样。

I refuse, however favorable the conditions are.

不管条件多好，我还是拒绝。

(3) 由 no matter + 疑问词引导的；例如：

No matter where you work, you can find time to study.

无论在哪里工作，都能找到时间学习。

No matter what you do, you should do it with might and main.

无论做什么，都要尽力去做。

(4) 由祈使句引导的；例如：

Let the weather be what it may, I'll go out.

不管天气如何，我一定要外出。

Come what may, we should support him.

无论什么情况，我们都应当支持他。

(5) 由 for all(that)或 notwithstanding(that)引导的。例如：

He was strong, for all (that) he was so small.

尽管他个小，但很结实。

He was unknown to most people, notwithstanding he had lived there a long time.

尽管他在这里住了很久，大部分人不认识他。

第三，倒装让步句。

倒装让步句有三种形式：(1)由 were, had, should 等引导的；(2)由 as 引导的；(3)由 that 引导的。倒装让步句又有两种形式：半倒装和全倒装。如果从句的主语是名词，一般需要全倒装；如果从句主语是代词，则只需半倒装。请看下列例句：

Even had she been alive, we shouldn't have seen her.

即使她还活在人间，我们也见不到她了。

Young $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{as is Jack,} \\ \text{as he is,} \end{array} \right\}$ he knows a lot.

杰克(他)年纪虽小，但却很懂事。

Fool that I was, I did not believe every word he said.

就算我傻，我也不相信他的话。

3.4.6 目的状语从句

目的状语从句表示主句动作或状态的目的。目的状语从句分为两类：正面目的状语从句和反面目的状语从句。正面目的状语从句由 that, so that, in order that, to the end that 等引导。同时，主句的谓语动词往往跟 may, might, can, could 搭配。反面目的状语从句由 lest 等引导。同时，主句的谓语动词往往跟 should 搭配。请看下列两类目的状语从句的例子：

(1) 正面目的状语从句：

Man does not live that he may eat, but eats that he may live.

人活着不是为了吃饭，吃饭则是为了活着。

I stepped aside so that she might go in.

我站开好让她进来。

He raised his hand in order that the bus might stop.

他举手示意，要车停下来。

He shouted at the top of his voice, to the end that he might be heard.

他放声大喊，为的是让人听见。

(2) 反面目的状语从句：

I will not make any noise, lest I should disturb you.

我不吭声，以免打搅你。

He is working hard for fear that he should fail.

他非常努力，惟恐失败。

Please remind me of it again tomorrow, in case I should forget it.

明天请再提醒我一下，以免把这事忘记。

3.4.7 结果状语从句

结果状语从句表示主句内容所产生的结果，其结构有以下三种形式：

(1) 主句 + $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{so that} \\ \text{that} \end{array} \right\} + \text{从句, 例如:}$

It was very cold, so that the river froze.

天气很冷，河水结冰。

What have I done that he should hurt me?

我到底亏了他什么，他竟这样伤害我？

(2) 由 so...that...或 such...that...引导，例如：

He is speaking so loud that I hear him even from here.

他说话嗓门大，我在这里都听见了。

He made such an excellent speech that everyone admired him.

他的演讲很精彩，人人都夸奖他。

(3) 由 with the result that 构成，例如：

They refused to pay the higher rent when an increase was announced, with the result that they were evicted from their apartment.

他们接到通知时拒付更高的房租，结果被赶出住所。

3.4.8 程度状语从句

程度状语从句说明某一动作或状态的发展程度，其结构有下列两种形式：

(1) 由 so...that...或 such...that...构成的，例如：

He has changed so that I can hardly recognize him.

他变化真大，我几乎认不出他了。

The difference is such that all will perceive it.

差异甚大，人人都看得出来。

(2) 由 as...as...构成的，例如：

Come as soon as you can.

尽可能早来。

3.4.9 比较状语从句

比较状语从句有两种形式：等比句和差比句。凡表示人或物的性质、特征等方面有某些相近似或相等的句子叫等比句。凡表示两者之间有差别的叫差比句。现将两类比较状语从句的结构分述如下：

第一，等比句。

等比句有两种句型：一种由 as...as...构成；一种由 no more (less)...than...构成，例如：

This window is just as wide as that one.

这扇窗户恰好跟那扇一样宽。

I could no more do that than you.

我和你一样做不了这件事。

She is no less diligent than her elder sister

她跟她姐姐一样用功。

第二，差比句。

差比有两个方面：一是表示“甲胜于乙”；一是表示“甲不及乙”。前一种用形容词或副词的比较级构成；后一种用等比句的否定式构成，例如：

(1)

This book is more interesting than that one.

这本书比那本更有趣。

Facts speak louder than eloquence.

事实善于雄辩。

(2)

It isn't as cold as it was yesterday.

今天并不像昨天那样冷。

He is not so foolish as I thought.

他并不像我想的那样愚蠢。

3.4.10 比例状语从句

比例状语从句表示前者和后者按照比例增加，或按比例减少，其结构有四种：由 *in proportion as* 引导的；由 *according as* 引导的；由 *as...so...* 引导的；由 *the + 比较级* 引导的。现按顺序举例如下：

You gain skill in proportion as you practice.

熟能生巧。

Men will reap according as they sow.

种瓜得瓜，种豆得豆。

As you sow, so will you reap.

种多少，收多少。

The more I think of it, the happier I am.

我越想越高兴。

3.4.11 方式状语从句

方式状语从句说明主句某一动作或状态进行的方式，其主要结构有三类：由 *as*, *as if*, *as though* 引导的；由 *so...that...*, *such...that...* 引导的；由 *the way* 引导的(美国英语中常用)。现按顺序举例如下：

(1)

When in Rome, do as the Romans do.

入国问俗。

He talked as if he had known all about it.

他说话的口气好像他全知道似的。

He behaves as if he were better than us.

他摆出一副高我们一等的样子。

(2)

I stood so that my head didn't appear.

我不露出头部那样站着。

Draw a triangle such that it will equal this square.

请画一个与此正方形面积相等的三角形。

(3)

He does not bother about trifles the way his elder brother does.

他不像他哥哥那样为琐事而奔忙。

He doesn't speak the way I do.

他说话的方式跟我不一样。

3.4.12 选择状语从句

选择状语从句表示说话人在两者之间的主观选择，说明宁可做什么而不愿做什么。选择状语从句有四大类，分别以例句说明如下：

(1)

Better die standing than live kneeling.

宁可站着死，不可跪着生。

(2)

I $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{would} \\ \text{had} \end{array} \right\}$ rather join you in research work than go on holiday.

我宁可和你一起搞科研，而不愿去度假。

(3)

I would sooner die $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{before doing} \\ \text{than do} \end{array} \right\}$ such a thing.

我宁可死也决不干这种事。

(4)

I $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{had} \\ \text{would} \end{array} \right\}$ as $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{soon} \\ \text{lief} \end{array} \right\}$ die as live in dishonor.

我宁可死也不愿苟生。

第 4 章 句子的并列与衔接

4.1 引言

并列是英语句子扩展的主要方式之一，也是一种重要的修辞手段。英语句子的每个要素可以并列，一个句子也可以和其他句子并列。如果按对等连接词所表示的意思来考虑，并列句可以分为八大类：一，表示增补意思的；二，表示对比意思的；三，表示选择意思的；四，表示关联意思的；五，表示结果和推理意思的；六，表示因果关系的；七，表示让步意思的；八，表示条件关系意思的。我们将在本章按此分类逐一进行讨论。

衔接是指整个语篇中，语句之间和段落之间必然存在的形式连接。中国人写文章讲究起承转合，这就是一种衔接方式。但汉语毕竟是重意合的语言，这种形式连接并不十分突出。英语则是重形合的语言，衔接的方式自然更多，更普遍。英语常通过语调、词汇、句法结构、篇章纽带等来进行衔接。掌握衔接规律，既有助于对原文的理解，又有助于表达完整的意思，出口有条不紊，下笔文理畅通。因此，我们在本章也将讨论英语的衔接手段。

4.2 并列

英语句子与句子并列而构成并列句，按内容划分为八类。现分述如下：

第一，表示增补意思的并列。

构成表示增补意思的并列句主要由 **and** 连接，此外，还有一些副词词组。这些副词或词组可以与 **and** 搭配，也可以借助分号(;)单独构成并列句，例如：

She washed the children's faces and gave them their breakfast.

她给孩子们洗脸，又给他们备好早餐。

This is the first question to settle; in addition, there is another matter to consider.

这是有待解决的首要问题，此外，还有一件事值得考虑。

I don't want to go, and besides, I am tired.

我不想去，再者，又很疲倦了。

The house isn't big enough for us; furthermore, it's too far from the town.

这房子不大，再者，离城太远。

The price is too high; moreover, it is in an unfavorable location.

房价太高，加之，位置不适合。

第二，表示对比关系的并列句。

除了 and 以外，表示对比关系的并列连接词还有：but, while, yet, still, however, whereas, nevertheless 等，例如：

Robert is secretive and David is candid.

罗伯特素喜秘而不宣，而戴维德则心直口快。

I am old, but you are young.

我老了，而你还年轻。

You like sports, while I'd rather read.

你喜欢运动，而我却爱看书。

Addison was not a speaker, yet he was an admirable writer.

艾迪生不善于辞令，然而是个了不起的作家。

Everything went against him; still he persisted.

事事跟他作对，但他坚持下去。

I'd like to go with you; however, my hands are full.

我很想跟你一起去，可是我忙不过来。

They want a house, whereas we'd live in a flat.

他们想买房子，而我们却愿住公寓。

The news may be unexpected; nevertheless, it is true.

这消息可能出乎意料，但又是真的。

第三，表示选择关系的并列句。

构成这类并列句的连接词主要是：or, nor, else, otherwise 等，例如：

You may do it, or you may ask someone else to do it.

你可以自己做，也可以请别人做。

He can't do it, nor can I, nor can you, nor can anybody.

他做不来，我也做不来，你也做不来，任何人都做不来。

He must be joking; else he's mad.

他一定在开玩笑，不然就是疯了。

Do what you are told; otherwise, you will be punished.

照吩咐去做，否则你就会受罚。

第四，表示关联意思的并列句。

这种并列句由关联连接词构成。英语中常用的关联连接词有：both...and...; not only...but also...; either...or...; neither...nor...; on the one hand...on the other...等，例如：

He both speaks and writes English.

他既能用英语说也能用英语写。

I not only heard it, but also saw it.

我不但听到了，而且看到了。

Either I will find a way, or I will make one.

我不是找到一条路，就是开辟一条路。

He neither ate, drank, nor smoked.

他既不吃，又不喝，也不抽烟。

On the one hand, you shouldn't be shy; on the other, you mustn't forget your manners.

一方面你不应该拘谨，一方面你也不要放肆。

第五，表示结果和推理的并列句。

这类并列句较多，可以按语体来划分：(1)用于口语体的由 and, so 构成；(2)用于一般场合的由 accordingly, thus 构成；(3)用于正式场合的由 consequently, hence, therefore 构成。现分组举例如下：

(1)

He heard an explosion and he phoned the police.

他听到爆炸声，于是打电话报告警察局。

They cost a lot of money, so you should use them carefully.

这些东西花费很大，因此应当小心使用。

(2)

It rained; accordingly, the football match was postponed.

天下雨，因此足球比赛延期了。

It was already late; thus, we decided to go home.

天色已晚，我们决定回家。

(3)

Boyle discovered it; hence Boyle's law.

波尔发现这一现象，故称波尔定律。

Something unforeseen had happened; therefore, he failed to come.

发生了预料不到的事，因此他没来。

第六，表示因果关系的并列句。

表示因果关系的并列句由并列连接词 for 构成。这里应当指出的是：因果并列句与原因状语是有差别的。一般说来，前者表示推断的原因；后者表示直接原因。请看下列例句：

The light went out because the oil ran out.

因为没油了，所以灯灭了。(直接原因)

The oil must run out, for the light went out.

一定是没油了，因为灯都灭了。(推断原因)

He is loved by all because he is honest.

因为他诚实，所以大家喜欢他。(直接原因)

He must be honest, for he is loved by all.

他一定诚实，因为大家都喜欢他。(推断原因)

第七，表示让步关系的并列句。

这类并列句由 but, however, yet, still 等构成，例如：

He is old, indeed, but he is healthy.

他虽已年高，但仍很健康。

It's raining hard; however, I think we should go out.

无论雨下得多大，我想我们还得出去。

She's a funny girl, yet you can't help liking her.

虽然她是个淘气的女孩，但你也不能不爱她。

We have made some achievements; still, we should be modest and prudent.
我们虽然取得一些成就，但还是要谦虚谨慎。

第八，表示条件关系的并列句。

表示条件关系的并列句通常由 **and** 构成，连接词往往可以省略。其形式有多种。现以下列例句分别说明：

No pains, no gains.
无劳则无获。

Sound in body, sound in mind.
身体健康则心智健全。

Like father, like son.
有其父必有其子。

Fast bind, fast find.
藏得好，丢不了。

Grasp all, lose all.
样样都要，全都失掉。

Once more effort, and we'll succeed.
再加一把劲，我们就成功。

Work hard, and you'll succeed.
努力工作，定会成功。

4.3 衔接

语篇语言学认为，构成一个语篇，有七大要素，其中主要两大要素是语义连贯(coherence)和形式连接(cohesion)。英语是重形合的语言，形式连接十分重要。所以对中国学生来说，学英语要特别注意英语结构上的衔接现象。英语衔接的方式很多，下面进行详细讨论。

第一，通过词语的重复构成衔接，例如：

Studies serve for delight, for ornament, and for ability. Their chief use for delight, is in privateness and retiring; for ornament, is in discourse; and for ability, is in the judgement and disposition.

读书足以怡情，足以博采，足以长才。其怡情也，最见于独处幽居之时；其博采也，最见于高谈阔论之中；其长才也，最见于处世判事之际。

第二，通过概念的重复构成衔接，例如：

Reading makes a full man; conference a ready man; and writing an exact man. And therefore, if a man write little, he had need have a great memory; if he confer little, he had need have a present wit; and if he read little, he had need have much cunning, to seem to know that he does not.

读书使人充实，讨论使人机智，笔记使人准确。因此不常作笔记者须记忆特强，不常讨论者须天生聪颖，不常读书者须欺世有术，始能无知显有知。

第三，通过指示照应构成衔接，例如：

The guide was very much interested in city planning. At one point in the tour she told the passengers about some of the plans that were being made to improve the city. These are some of the things that must be done:

1. New hospital must be built.
2. More parking spaces must provided.
3. The airport must be expanded.
4. New schools must be built.
5. Public transportation must be improved.

导游对城市规划津津乐道。在一个旅游点，她就对游客大谈正在筹划的城市改造计划。以下就是规划中的几项：

1. 要建新医院。
2. 要提供更多的停车场。
3. 现有机场要扩建。
4. 要兴办学校。
5. 要改善市内交通。

第四，通过人称代词照应构成衔接，例如：

So now Della's beautiful hair fell about her rippling and shining like a cascade of brown waters. It reached below her knee and made itself almost a garment for her.

And then she did it up again nervously and quickly. Once she faltered for a minute and stood still while a tear or two splashed on the worn red carpet.

这时德拉的秀发散披在身上，像一股褐色的小瀑布一样，涟漪阵阵，粼光闪闪。头发一直垂到膝盖，仿佛给她披上衣纱。然后，她神经质地又很快将头发撩起，踌躇了一会儿，静立在那儿，一两滴眼泪溅落在破旧的红地毯上。

第五，通过句子结构和排比构成衔接，例如：

The late 1960s brought to pop music a fusion of radically different geographical and cultural influences. From the East came the influences of religion and mysticism, which made popular such instruments as the tabla and the sitar. From the South came a Latin influence, with its steel drums and marimbas, branching into such forms as reggae and calypso. And from the West, particularly from Britain and the American Midwest, came folk music with its simple melodies and melodramatic lyrics, to become perhaps the most important influence on pop music at the time.

六十年代晚期，流行音乐出现了迥然不同的地域影响和文化影响融合在一起的现象。来自东方的宗教和神秘主义影响，使塔布拉鼓和西塔尔琴成了流行乐器。来自南方是拉丁影响，引进钢鼓和木琴，形成雷格摇滚乐和即兴小调之类的流派。来自西方的，特别是来自英国和美国中西部的，是民间音乐，旋律简单，抒发激情，也许对当代音乐产生了最大影响。

第六，通过衔接词语构成衔接，例如：

Many people exercise every day and never lose weight. Exercising is important. Still, the only sure way to lose weight is to stop eating.

许多人天天运动而体重却有增无减。运动固然重要。然而，减轻体重的唯一途径是节食。

Most people can learn the basics of a craft quickly. For example, they can learn to carve, weave, or solder in weeks.

大多数人很快就可以学会一门手艺的基本技能。例如，几周内就可以学会雕刻、纺织或锡焊。

4.4 衔接词语的分类

从上文可以看出, 英语的衔接词语就像交通路线上的路标, 有了路标, 行人就不会迷失方向。而有了衔接词语, 读者就可以理清文章的思路, 更好地预测下文, 理解和掌握文章内容。运用英语衔接词语, 英语文章就写得严密、流畅、自然。英语衔接词语如按其含义和作用可以分为下列十二大类。

第一, 开头语(initiating), 例如: well, now, all right, to begin with, first, first of all, first and foremost, at first 等。

第二, 分岔语(digression), 例如: by the way, incidentally, could I just point out 等。

第三, 添加语(adding), 例如: additionally, again, also, and then, as well, besides, beyond that, equally important, for one thing, further, furthermore, in addition, likewise, moreover, next, on top of that, over and above 等。

第四, 列举语(listing), 例如: first...second...third..., for one thing...and for another, on the one hand, on the other, one reason is...the other is...等。

第五, 对比语(contrast), 例如: after all, and yet, but, by contrast, conversely, however, nevertheless, on the contrary, on the other hand, otherwise, still, whereas, yet 等。

第六, 加强语(reinforcing), 例如: above all, certainly, especially, in any way, in fact, in particular, in deed, most important, naturally, really, to be sure, surely, undoubtedly, without fail, very likely 等。

第七, 比较语(comparison), 例如: also, as, by the same token, by comparison, likewise, similarly 等。

第八, 解释语(explanation), 例如: that is to say, i.e., in other words, namely, to be exact 等。

第九, 举例语(exemplification), 例如: as an example, as an illustration, for example, for instance 等。

第十, 让步语(concession), 例如: although this may be true, be that it may, after all, at the same time, granted, I admit, I concede, while its is true 等。

第十一, 结果语(result), 例如: accordingly, as a consequence, as a result,

consequently, for that reason, hence, inevitably, necessarily, that being the case, then, therefore, thus, so 等。

第十二, 总结语(summarizing), 例如: as has been noted, as I have said, finally, in brief, in other words, in short, in summary, lastly, on the whole, to be sure, to sum up, to conclude, in conclusion 等。

4.5 多功能连接词 and 的衔接作用

并列连接词 and 在语篇中有多种衔接作用。传统语法和修辞学都不主张用它来开始一个句子, 但是在现代英语中, 无论是非正式文体还是正式文体, 不仅用它来开始一个句子, 还常用它来引导一个段落, and 成为多功能衔接词。现按其功能分述如下。

第一, 表示时间的延续, 例如:

It was on Tuesday of that week that old Ben Rosselli, president of the First Bank and grandson of the bank's founder, made an announcement—startling and somber—which reverberated through the bank and far beyond. And the next day, Wednesday, the bank's "flagship" downtown branch discovered the presence of a thief.

那一周星期二, 美国第一银行总裁, 即银行创始人的孙子, 老本·罗塞利, 发表了一个惊人而不祥的声明, 立刻在银行内外引起反响。接着第二天, 星期三, 该行在市中心的分行又发现了某盗贼的踪迹。

第二, 表示对比, 例如:

The captain gazed gloomily at his sword that hung upon the wall. In the closest nearby was stored his faded uniform, stained and worn by weather and service. What a long, long time it seemed since those old days of war's alarms!

And now, veteran that he was of his country's strenuous times, he had been reduced to abject surrender by a women's soft eyes and smiling lips...

上尉闷闷不乐地凝视着挂在墙上的指挥刀, 旁边壁柜里放着他那件褪了色的旧军服。自从号角长鸣到现在似乎好久好久了。

而现在, 这位曾在国家多难之秋投效军旅的男子汉, 竟为一双温柔的秀眼

和含笑的红唇所征服而垂首乞怜了……

第三，表示评论，例如：

Fighting was his element. And he fought with a passion, a tenacity and a success such as few could rival.

打斗就是他的本分。而能像他那样打斗得热情、顽强，而且一打就赢的人实在少见。

第四，表示让步，例如：

I am not a politician. I had no real interest in politics and no participation, until I volunteered for Nixon campaign. And I am no worshipper of Nixon.

我不是搞政治的。我过去对政治确不感兴趣，也不参入政治，后来却自愿参加尼克松的竞选运动。尽管如此，我并不崇拜尼克松。

第五，表示类似，例如：

No doubt Jimmy acted in good faith. He's honest enough, whatever else he may be. And your mother—in her heavy-handed way, as you put it—acted in good faith as well.

无疑，吉米是襟怀坦白的。他不管怎样都是诚实的。而你的母亲，尽管你说她心狠手辣，同样是襟怀坦白的。

第六，表示增补，例如：

They say never go back. But it was a day for going back. Flocks of clouds grazed across the sky. Speckled quail rustled in the under-bush. And the song of locust vibrated through hickory hills and oak valley. Every one knows such a day.

人们常说，切莫缅怀既往。但当日正是该回忆往事的日子。朵朵浮云悠然飘过天空。麻色鹤鹑在矮树丛沙沙而过。还有蝉声在胡桃山丘和橡树幽谷回荡。每个人都经历过这样的日子啊。

第七，表示结果，例如：

One hundred years of delay has passed since President Lincoln freed the slaves, yet their heirs, their grandsons, are fully free. They are not yet freed from the bonds

of injustice. They not yet free from social and economic oppression. And this nation, for all its hopes and all its boasts, will not be fully free until all its citizens are free.

自林肯总统释放黑奴以来已经耽误了 100 年。黑奴们的子孙仍没有完全自由，仍摆脱不了不公平的束缚，仍摆脱不了社会压迫和经济压迫。因此，我国虽然满怀希望，一味自夸，可是要在所有公民获得自由后才会有完全的自由。

第5章 特殊句型

5.1 引言

英语在其形成和发展的过程中，像其他语言一样，产生了很多习惯用法，也构成一些特殊句型。这些特殊句型常常不符合语法规律。有些语法学家为了使这些特殊句型规范化，常常自圆其说地做出一番解释和补充，企图使它们在语法上站住脚。这样做，有时把规则搞得更复杂而不成其规则。例如，英语句子“*It is up to you to do it.*”，有的语法学家把“*to do it*”看成是“*It*”的“真实主语”。按此说法，这句话可以改成“*To do it is up to you*”。可是英美人从来就不这样说，因为这是个错误的句子。因此，学习英语要听其自然，对于不符合一般规则的句子，我们可以将其视为特殊句型，按其本身的结构加以分析。我们在本章就讨论英语的特殊句型。

5.2 关于 SVA 和 SVOA 句型

有些现代英语语法学家将状语(A)也作为句子的要素来考虑，因此把英语的基本句型定为七种。本书按另外一些当代英语语法学家的意见，将基本句型定为五种。这是考虑到 SVA 和 SVOA 句型与英语的动词成语(即多词动词)关系紧密的缘故。多词动词结构复杂，我们将在下一章进行详细讨论。

5.3 使役结构

使役结构(the Causative Construction)是英语的一种独特的句子结构。这种独特的结构一般由动词 *have* 构成；套用三种常用句型：V2, V4, V8。三种句型的语义分别为：

第一，“使某人做某事”，例如：

What would you have me say ?

你要我说什么？

第二，“使某人一直做某事”，例如：

I can't have you running up and down all day long.

我可不能叫你整天跑上跑下。

第三，“使某事被(某人)做”，例如：

I'll { $\left. \begin{array}{c} \text{get} \\ \text{have} \end{array} \right\}$ the document typed.

我去叫人把文件打印一下。

由于 have 是多义词，还有“经历”和“遭遇”的意思，所以有时句子结构不变，语义却产生变化。同时在这些情况下，get 不可取代 have。关于这一点，中国学生要特别注意：

He had his horse die on the journey.

他在旅途中丧失了坐骑。

We shall have the fog rising.

雾会散的。

The king had his head cut off.

国王被处以斩首。

在使役结构中，have 为实义动词，因此，在转换成否定句和疑问句时，要借助英语助动词 do, have 等，而不能将主动词 have 本身视为助动词，例如：

He had you doing it all morning, didn't he ?

他要你忙了一上午，是吗？

Did you have your hair cut yesterday ?

你是昨天理发的吗？

He hasn't had the document typed yet.

他还未叫人把文件打印好。

5.4 It 句型

代词 *it* 常用以指自然现象、时间和空间，这是一般语法书都已涉及到的。代词 *it* 也常用作非人称主语，构成特殊句型，其用法如下：

第一，在有上下文的情况下，*it* 常用来表示进行语言交际双方的已知信息，例如：

Where does it feel painful ?

哪里痛？

How is it ?

近况怎样？

It's your turn.

轮到你啦。

第二，英语常用形容词，通常套用 *it* 句型，或语气委婉，或重点突出，例如：

It is very kind of you (=You are very kind).

你真好。

It is foolish of you to do that.

你真傻，去干那种事。

It is sad about Mr. Brown, isn't it ?

布朗先生这会可真惨啊，是不是？

第三，英美人讲话常带点自己的观点，这主要借助情态动词。有时为了缓和语气，常用 *it* 句型与不定式配合，取代情态动词，例如：

It is necessary to exert ourselves = We must exert ourselves.

我们必须尽力去做。

It's up to you to do it = You ought to do it.

你应该去做。

第四，*it* 和 *that*-从句结合，一般用来表示强调，但也可以用来表示情感、

评论、推测、偶然等，例如：

It is necessary that you exert yourself.

=You must exert yourself.

你必须尽力去做。

It seems to me that being rich is not necessarily being happy.

=I don't think being rich is necessarily being happy.

我看有钱未必就幸福。

It happened that I knew the man.

=I happened to know the man.

我碰巧认识这人。

第五，新闻报道文体力求客观，因此避免用主动语态；所以常用 It 句型的被动语态，例如：

It is reported that...

据报道说……

It is suggested that...

有人建议说……

It is assumed that...

据推测说……

It must be pointed out that...

必须指出……

5.5 There be 句型

一般英语语法书都谈到 **there be** 句型表示“存在”。其实，除此之外，**there be** 型还有其他功能，其结构也有多种形式。我们在此作一个系统介绍。

第一，**there be** 句型的主语只要是不定代词，就与我们讨论的基本句型完全对应，例如：

There was no one waiting.

= No one was waiting (SV).

没有谁在等待。

There must be something wrong.

=Something must be wrong (SVC).

一定是弄错了。

There are plenty of people getting promotions.

=Plenty of people are getting promotions (SVO).

有很多人在晋升。

There is something causing my friend distress.

=Something is causing my friend distress (SVoO).

我朋友正有痛心事。

There have been two bulldozers knocking the place flat.

=Two bulldozers have been knocking the place flat (SVOC).

两台推土机在把地面整平。

第二，there be 句型有两种变体：一是加 seem, happen, be likely, be bound, 等词语来表示说话人的态度；一是用 come, go, enter, lie, live, occur, stand 等动词来取代 be 来加强描绘效果，例如：

There happened to be nobody in the room.

幸好屋里没人。

There are likely to be more difficulties than you were prepared for.

遇到的苦难很可能比你预料的得多得多。

There stands at the center of the square a monument.

广场中央矗立着一座纪念碑。

There entered a strange-looking little man.

走进来一个样子古怪的矮个子。

第三，there be + no + -ing 结构多用来表示“禁止”。在这种情况下，there be 可以省略，例如：

There is no smoking. —→ No smoking.

禁止吸烟。

There is no parking. —→ No parking.

禁止停车

There are no denying facts.

事实不容否认。

第四, there be 句型可以构成不定式或动名词来充当 T3 和 T4 句型中的宾语, 例如:

I don't want { $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{there to be} \\ \text{there being} \end{array} \right\}$ any trouble.

但愿没有麻烦。

We don't want { $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{there to be} \\ \text{there being} \end{array} \right\}$ another war.

我们都不想再发生战争。

第五, there be 句型也可以构成独立主格结构 (the Nominative Absolute Construction), 例如:

There being no more work for us to do, we went home.

由于再没别的工作要做, 我们就回家了。

5.6 非生命主语句

在英语中, 有时为了避免主观性, 不让人卷入, 而使句子显得更含蓄, 常用非生命的名词做主语, 构成简单句。有学者将这种句子称为“非生命主语句”。这种句子含有条件、原因、结果、时间等意味, 例如:

This medicine will make you feel better.

=If you take this medicine, you will feel better.

你吃了这药就会好些。

Business took me to town.

=I went to town because I had some business.

我因公进城一趟。

His wealth enables him to do anything.

=He is so rich that he can do anything.

他有钱，什么都做得成。

The sight of the orphan always reminds me of his parents.

=Whenever I see the orphan, I will think of his parents.

一见到这孤儿，我就想起他父母。

Last year saw a bumper harvest.

=There was a bumper harvest last year.

去年是大丰收年。

5.7 特殊否定句

英语的否定句一般靠功能词(助动词和情态动词)加否定词 **not** 等构成,也可以由否定代词构成。此外,英语还有一些特殊的否定句,对中国学生来说,不弄清其结构和含义,就会影响交际。特殊否定句式种类较多,我们选择常用的句型进行讨论。

第一,部分否定句。

我们讲话所涉及的范围,不外乎三种情况:(1)全体;(2)部分;(3)绝无。与此相关的英语词语有:

(1)全体	(2)部分	(3)绝无
all	some	none
always	sometimes	never
both	one or the other	neither
everybody	somebody	nobody
everything	something	nothing

值得中国学生注意的是:表示全体词语的否定句相当于表示部分词语的否定句,而不同于表示绝无词语的否定句,例如:

All his words are not credible.

= Some of his words are not credible.

≠ None of his words is credible.

他的话不都可靠。

他的话有些不可靠。

他的话一句都不可靠。

Both children are not clever.
= One is clever and the other is not.
≠ Neither of the children is clever.
两个孩子不都聪明。
其一聪明，其二不聪明。
两个孩子都不聪明。

第二，加强否定句。

英语加强否定句有三种形式：(1)加微量词；(2)加宏量词；(3)加其他强化语气的词。请看下列三类例句：

(1)加微量词：

It's not worth a farthing.

分文不值。

She didn't sleep a wink all night.

她彻夜未合眼。

There is not the least wind.

一丝风儿都没有。

(2)加宏量词：

No man on earth would ever believe it.

无论谁都不会相信。

No trouble in the world, I assure you.

我担保丝毫麻烦也没有。

It makes no difference at all.

毫无差别。

(3)加其他词语：

Certainly not.

当然不。

It'd be by no means clear.

无论如何都不清楚。

第三，语义否定句。

所谓语义否定句是指句子结构并无否定形式，但意思却是否定的句子。这

种否定句又分为两种：(1)句义否定；(2)词义否定。

第一种句义否定是用条件句、疑问句、感叹句、省略句来表示否定，例如：

Do that again if you dare.

量你不敢再这样。

Despise me if I knew anything about it.

我发誓，我根本不知道。

Who cares?

没有谁会理会。

Who would have thought of that?

没有谁会想到这一点。

What an idea!

休想！

He a gentleman!

他绝非君子。

I know better.

我看不见得吧。

第二种词义否定是借助含有否定意义的副词或代词(如 *hardly*, *scarcely*, *seldom*, *little*, *few*, *too* 等)来表达否定。除此以外，还有动词、名词、形容词、介词。能构成否定句的动词有：*fail*, *lack*, *exclude*, *refuse*, *neglect* 等。能构成否定句的名词有：*ignorance*, *absence*, *exclusion* 等。能构成否定句的形容词有：*free*, *short*, *far*。能构成否定句的介词有 *without*, *beyond*, *except*, *above* 等。试举以下几例：

I fail to understand what you mean.

我不明白你的意思。

The door refuses to shut.

这门老关不上。

Ignorance of the law excuses no one.

不懂法律并不能作为免罪的理由。

He is far from being honest.

他极不老实。

He is above deceit.

他不会骗人。

第四，否定之否定句。

这里是语法概念，不是哲学概念。否定之否定是一种委婉的表达方式，两个否定词结合在一起，相互抵消，实际上得出肯定的意思，例如：

No joy without alloy.

有喜必有悲。

We cannot be too careful in doing experiments.

做试验要特别小心。

There is no child but knows him.

小孩个个都认识他。

第五，二重否定句。

二重否定句跟否定之否定句不同。句中虽出现两个否定结构，但全句还是表示否定意义。这种否定句常用于非正式体和口语体，例如：

I can't see any wit in her.

我看她没有理智。

They don't seem hardly able to help it.

看来他们也无能为力了。

5.8 特殊比较句

我们在第3章已经谈到比较从句的两种形式，即等比和差比。这两种形式一般都是将两个人或两种事物的性质进行比较。在实际运用中，这两种结构还有一些特殊用法。下面逐一进行讨论。

第一，用 as...as...指同一个人或同一种事物不同性质的比较；或用其指两个人或两种事物两种不同性质的比较，例如：

He is kind as he is honest.

他既诚实又友善。

He was as covetous as cruel.

他既残酷又贪婪。

He is as kind as his sister is honest.

他妹妹诚实而他则友善。

He is as cunning as you are clever.

他的狡猾好似你的聪明。

第二, as...as...与 can (may) be 搭配可以构成形容词最高级所表示的意思, 例如:

You are as wrong as wrong can be.

你大错特错了。

The boys were as green as green can be.

这些孩子的精力无以复加。

I am as thirsty as thirsty may be.

我渴得要命。

第三, more...than...也可以指同一个人或同一事物两种不同性质的比较, 例如:

She is more attractive than pretty.

与其说她漂亮, 不如说她迷人。

She is more shy than unsociable.

与其说她不爱交际, 不如说她腼腆。

第四, more than 并用相当于形容词或副词的最高级, 例如:

He is more than pleased with the result.

他对结果极为满意。

She was dressed more than simply.

她的穿着极其朴素。

5.9 特殊感叹句

英语感叹句一般由 how 和 what 加主谓结构而构成。我们在这里介绍几种

特殊的感叹句，其结构如下：

第一，疑问词+ should...but 构成的感叹句往往表示“意外”、“不可理解”等，例如：

Who should come in but the very man ?

没料到进来的竟然是他本人！

Whom should I meet but my old friend Tom ?

我遇到的不是别人，就是旧交汤姆啊！

Of course he got married, and who should be his wife but Barbara ?

当然他结婚了，他的妻子还会是谁呢，就是芭芭拉呀！

第二，英语不定式也可以构成感叹句，有时不定式前面还可以加逻辑主语，例如：

To think that he should fail me in this crisis!

在此次危机中他竟然不帮我一点忙！

To think that he has become a minister!

想不到他竟然当了部长！

A gentleman to come to that!

一个上等人竟然下流到这种地步！

第三，由 fancy 构成的感叹句，例如：

Fancy working everyday!

你想想，天天都得干啊！

Fancy her saying such rude things!

你看看，她竟然说出这样无礼的话来！

Fancy that!

想想看，那有多奇怪！

第四，一些表示愿望的虚拟句实际上也含有感叹的意味，例如：

Oh that I were at the front.

但愿我就在 frontline！

Too late! O might I see her just once more!

啊，太晚了！但愿再见她一面！

Would that you were with us forever!

愿你永远陪伴我!

If only the rain would soon stop now!

但愿雨即刻就停!

May God bless you!

神其佑汝!

第 6 章 多词动词句

6.1 引言

在第 5 章, 我们提到了 SVA 句型和 SVOA 句型。这两种句型都是由多词动词(multi-word verbs)构成的。所谓多词动词就是传统英语语法中所说的动词成语。按当代英语语法, 多词动词的定义是: 一个动词跟一个以上的其他词组合在一起, 表达一个概念, 充当一个动词的句法作用。由于多词动词结构复杂, 我们在本书将由它构成的句子称为多词动词句, 并对多词动词的结构进行详细讨论。考虑到我国学生的需要, 我们将多词动词按其结构分为 10 类:

代码	结构	例词
MV1	v. i. + adv.	break in
MV2	v. t. + adv.	blow up
MV3	v. i. + prep.	glance through
MV4	v. t. + prep.	get (somebody) through
MV5	v. i. + adv. + prep.	put up with
MV6	v. t. + adv. + prep.	bring (somebody) around to
MV7	v. t. + n. + prep.	take care of
MV8	be + adj. + prep	be fond of
MV9	v. + adj.	cut short
MV10	v. + v.	let go

各类多词动词的语法功能和结构各不相同。我们每学一个多词动词不仅要明确其含义, 更要了解其词性和功能。下面按代码顺序逐一进行讨论。

6.2 MV1 多词动词

MV1 型多词动词由不及物动词加副词构成, 整个词组起不及物动词的作用。这类多词动词很多, 其特点有二:

第一，具有一词多义性，以 come out 为例，就有如下意思：

The workers come out to a man. (=strike)

工人全体罢工。

Jack got a three-year sentence, but he may come out early for good conduct.

(=to be released)

杰克被判3年徒刑；如果表现好，可以提前释放。

The crocuses have come out early this year because of the mild winter. (=to be in bloom)

由于出现暖冬，番红花今年开得早。

My eldest daughter comes out next week. (=formally enter the society)

我大女儿下周将正式步入社会。

The child loved to watch the stars come out at night. (=appear)

这孩子喜欢看晚上出星星。

The book came out two weeks ago. (=to be published)

这本书是两周前出版的。

The truth came out at his trial. (=to be revealed)

在审讯他时，案情终于真相大白。

John came out top in the examination. (=to be placed)

这次考试，约翰名列榜首。

No sooner had the words come out than I regretted my indiscretion in speaking them. (=to be spoken)

话一说出来，我就后悔失口了。

Can you help me with this sum, please? It won't come out. (=to produce an answer)

请帮我算算这笔数好吗？我算来算去算不对。

第二，由于有的多词动词沿用已久，成语性较强；有的则相反，成语性不强。前者可以通过加连字号(-)转化成名词，后者句法功能灵活，可以构成倒装句。MV1型多词动词也是如此，例如：

The prisoners broke out last night.

There was a break-out of the prisoners last night.

昨晚囚犯集体越狱。

The prices came down.

Down came the prices.

物价下跌了。

6.3 MV2 多词动词

MV2 型多词动词由及物动词加副词构成，整个词组相当于一个及物动词。一般说来，这类多词动词都可以转换成为被动式，但不能构成倒装句。使用 MV2 型多词动词时要注意宾语的位置。考虑到这一点，MV2 型多词动词可以分为三组：

第一组，宾语可以放在副词之前，也可以放在副词之后，例如，fill in:

You filled the application in incorrectly.

You filled in the application incorrectly.

你把申请表填错了。

第二组，宾语只能放在动词和副词之间，例如，move along:

The police moved the spectators along.

警察要围观者走开。

第三组，宾语必须放在副词之后，例如，put forth:

The willow trees put forth new buds.

柳树吐出新芽。

MV2 型多词动词还有如下特点：

第一，上述所有三组多词动词的宾语如果是代词，那么，宾语(即代词)都放在动词和副词之间。上述三组的例句可写成：

You filled it in incorrectly.

The police moved them along.

The willow trees put them forth.

第一，以上三组中，凡成语性强的，可以加连字号转换成名词，例如，blow up:

The studio will blow up your photographs well.

The studio will do a good blow-up of your photographs.
这家冲洗店会很好地把你的照片放大。

第三，第一组中，凡成语性强的，还可以加连字号转换成形容词，但第二组和第三组则一般不可转换，例如：

There are your well blown-up photographs.
这些都是给你冲洗得很好的照片。

6.4 MV3 多词动词

这种多词动词由不及物动词加介词构成，整个词组用作一个及物动词。一般说来，这类多词动词都可以转化成被动式，以 look into 为例：

The mayor looked into the decrease of the municipal income.
The decrease of the municipal income was looked into (by the mayor).
市长调查了市政收入减少的原因。

此外，MV3 多词动词还有如下特点：

第一，有些 MV3 多词动词可视为“意念被动式”动词，如 fall into, fall to, go by 等。由于其本身具有被动意义，因此一般不可转换成被动语态，例如：

The present paper falls into (=is divided into) five parts.
本文分为五部分。

第二，成语性很强的可以加连字号转换成名词或形容词，例如，break into：

The thief broke into the house last night.
The thief did a break-into last night.
那小偷昨晚闯进此屋行窃。

The police was investigating the broken-into house.
警察正在调查那栋遭窃的房子。

第三，语性不强的有以下两种句法功能：(1)可以倒装；(2)在定语从句中，介词可以与动词分家，例如，provide for：

He has provided for his family well.

For his family he has provided well.

他已把家人供养得好。

The family for which he has provided well are independent now.

由他供养得好的一家人现在都已自食其力了。

6.5 MV4 多词动词

MV4 多词动词由及物动词加介词构成，整个词组用作一个及物动词。由于动词本身是及物的，因此动词后面一定带宾语。这种多词动词用法灵活，例如：

He foisted the damaged goods on his customers.

On his customers he foisted the damaged goods.

他把残次商品推销给顾客。

His customers on whom he foisted the damaged goods were too honest.

让他推销残次商品的顾客真是太老实了。

根据笔者的经验，学习 MV4 型多词动词最好以介词为纲来进行归类，并且结合词义来进行记忆。比如说，与 of 搭配的，与 from 搭配等。下面列举几例：

(1) 与 of (参看第 2 章常用句型 D5) 搭配的动词有：

assure, inform, warn, convince, remind, accuse, deprive, peel, rid, rob, etc.

(2) 与 from 搭配的动词有：

prevent, stop, protect, refrain, shelter, save, free, etc.

6.6 MV5 多词动词

MV5 型多词动词由不及物动词加副词再加介词构成，整个词组用作一个及物动词。这种多词动词也可分为成语性强的和成语性不强的两类。前者可以转换成被动式，加连字号可以转换成形容词，但一般不转换成名词。后者不能作上述转换，句法功能灵活，例如：

He is looking forward to his retirement.

His retirement is being looked forward to.

他期待退休。

His looked-forward-to retirement will come tomorrow.

他期待的退休的愿望明天就会实现。

The coaster went aground on a sandbank.

On a sandbank the coaster went aground.

那艘沿海航行的轮船在沙堤搁浅。

The sandbank on which the coaster went aground has been removed.

使那沿海轮船搁浅的沙堤已被清除。

6.7 MV6 多词动词

MV6 型多词动词由及物动词加副词再加介词构成，跟 MV5 不同的是，这种多词动词词组中的动词后面一定要接宾语。在用法上，句法功能比较灵活，例如：

Some trickster had fobbed him off with this story.

He had been fobbed off with this story.

With this story some trickster had fobbed him off.

某骗子用这派胡言搪塞了他。

This story with which some trickster had fobbed him off was nothing new.

某骗子搪塞他的那派胡言不是什么新鲜玩意。

6.8 MV7 多词动词

MV7 多词动词由及物动词加名词再加介词构成。这种多词动词从表面看似乎跟 MV4 相同，其实不然。因为其动词后面的名词是固定不变的。同时构成这种多词动词的及物动词多为常用动词，如：have, make 等。使用这种多词动词应注意以下两点。

第一，有些成语性不强的，结构形式不固定，名词前有定语，而且可以随意替换，例如：

She had	{	an no a good a sharp a discerning much of a etc.	}	ear for music.
---------	---	--	---	----------------

她懂音乐。

她不懂音乐。

她很懂音乐。

她音乐鉴赏能力很强。

她音乐鉴赏能力很敏锐。

她音乐鉴赏能力很高。

第二，如果按转换规律来划分，MV7 多词动词可分为以下四种：

(1) 不可转换成被动式的，例如：

She had a good ear for music.

A good ear was had for music.

(2) 可以转换成被动式，但主语必须是原动词宾语的，例如：

The scenery made an impression on the visitors.

An impression was made on the visitors.

景色给参观者留下印象。

The visitors were made an impression on.

(3) 可以转换成被动式，但主语必须是介词宾语的，例如：

They made fun of me.

I was made fun of (by them).

他们取笑我。

Fun was made of me.

(4) 可以转换成被动式，主语既可以是动词宾语也可以是介词宾语的，例如：

The governor made an example of the prisoner.

The prisoner was made an example of.

An example was made of the prisoner.

州长拿这囚犯开刀，惩一儆百。

6.9 MV8 多词动词

MV8 多词动词由动词 to be 加形容词再加介词构成，整个词组用作一个及物动词。这种多词动词没有被动式。与形容词搭配的介词不多，主要有：of, at, to, in, with 等，例如：

I am fond of (=like) music.

我喜欢音乐。

Nobody is aware of (=knows) the secret.

没有谁知道这个秘密。

He is good at (knows quite well) languages.

他通晓多种语言。

He was agreeable to (agreed) the suggestion.

他同意这个建议。

He is versed in (mastered) mathematics.

他精通数学。

I'm pleased with (satisfied with) your work.

我对你的工作感到满意。

6.10 MV9 多词动词

MV9 多词动词由动词加形容词构成。如果动词是及物动词，则可以转换成被动式。如果动词是不及物动词，则当然不可转换成被动式，例如：

The heavy rain cut the game short.

The game was cut short (by the heavy rain).

大雨中断了比赛。

Gasoline { goes
falls } short.
runs

汽油短缺。

6.11 MV10 多词动词

MV10 多词动词由及物动词加不及物动词构成。也许由于它处于萌芽状态，这类多词动词现在为数不多。其结构也许是由常用句型 V2 演变而来，例如：

The boy caught me by the coat and he would not let me go.

The boy grabbed my coat and would not let go.

这孩子抓住我的衣不放。

第 7 章 句子的压缩

7.1 引言

压缩是与扩展相对而言的。我们前面都是讨论英语句子的扩展规律，扩展的目的是使句子的意思更加明确。而在意思明确的情况下，人们又特别注意言简意赅。同时语言有口语和笔语之分，有正式和非正式文体之分。笔语和正式文体一般要求语言精炼。古人言：“言而无文，行之不远”。这充分说明笔语的重要性；而“口语的摘要，是古人的文”（鲁迅语）。英语从口语到笔语大致有三个发展阶段：首先是组织一连串的句子；其次是把简单句合并成并列句和复合句；最后把复杂的句子压缩成言简意赅的句子。我们在本章系统讨论英语句子的压缩。

7.2 并列句的压缩

我们在第 4 章已讨论过并列句，了解每种并列句中分句与分句的关系。通过分析这些相互关系，就可以理清英语句子压缩的规律。

第一，两个分句的动作如果同时发生，可以压缩成简单句，例如下列并列句，就可以按作者的用意，做出多种压缩形式：

The spectators leapt to their feet and they roared approval. —→

The spectators leapt to their feet, roaring approval.

Roaring approval, the spectators leapt to their feet.

The spectators, roaring approval, leapt to their feet.

Leaping to their feet, the spectators roared approval.

The spectators roared approval, leaping to their feet.

The spectators, leaping to their feet, roared approval.

观众起立，大声喝彩。

第二，表示因果关系的并列句可以压缩成各种形式的句子，例如：

His health was bad and therefore he was unable to work. —→

Owing to ill health, he was unable to work.

由于身体欠佳，他不能工作。

Mary is tired, and she can't watch TV. —→

Mary is too tired to watch TV.

玛丽累得连电视都不能看了。

第三，表示对比关系的并列句可以压缩成简单句，例如：

Robert is secretive and David is candid. —→

Robert is secretive in contrast with David.

罗伯特遮遮掩掩，大卫心直口快。

第四，表示条件关系的并列句可以压缩成简单句(非生命主语句)，例如：

Compare them carefully and you'll see the difference. —→

Careful comparison of them will show you the difference.

只要仔细比较，差别就显而易见了。

Persevere and you will succeed. —→

Perseverance will bring you success.

坚持不懈，就会成功。

第五，表示结果关系的并列句可以压缩成简单句，例如：

A butterfly alighted and as a result it died. —→

A butterfly alighted to die.

一只蝴蝶坠地而死。

He went back to his hometown and he found many changes had taken place there. —→

He went back to his hometown only to find many changes had taken place there.

他回到故乡，发现起了很多变化。

7.3 名词从句的压缩

名词从句的压缩一般是将从句压缩成动词的非谓语形式或其他词组。这样一来，原句的意思更突出，整个句子结构更严密。名词从句的压缩方式如下。

第一，从句压缩成名词词组或-ing，例如：

Her chief worry was that she lacked experience. →

Her chief worry was her lack of experience.

I insisted { that he come with us.
→ on his coming with us.

我坚持要跟我们一起来。

I was afraid { that { John }
 { he } } might have an accident.
→ of { John's }
 { his } } having an accident.

我担心约翰会出事。

第二，从句压缩成不定式，例如：

I hope { that I'll be }
 { to be } } able to come.

我希望自己能来。

I don't know { what I should do.
 → what to do.

我不知道该做什么。

I have decided { that I help him.
 → to give my help to him.

我决定帮助他。

7.4 定语从句的压缩

形容词从句(即定语从句)可以压缩成-ing 或-ed 或不定式, 压缩形式如下:

第一, 形容词从句的谓语动词是主动语态时, 可以压缩成-ing; 在这种情况下, 一般不必考虑时态和体, 例如:

The boys { who have shouted
 who have been shouting
 who had shouted
 who had been shouting
 who shouted
 who were shouting } the loudest were the winners.
 → shouting

嚷得最凶的那些孩子是胜者。

第二, 形容词从句的谓语动词是被动语态时, 可以压缩成-ed; 在这种情况下, 也不必考虑时态和体, 例如:

This is a book { which is written
 which was written
 which has been written
 which had been written } by a worker.
 → written

这是一本由工人撰写的书。

第三，形容词从句可以压缩成不定式。在这种情况下，原从句的关系词一般是宾格关系代词或关系副词，请看下列例句：

The thing { that you should do } is what everyone else is doing.
 { → to do }

你该做的事正是其他人正在做的。

The person { whom you should ask } is Tom.
 { → to ask }

你该问的人是汤姆。

The place { where you go } is Brown's.
 { → to go }

你该去的地方是布朗家。

The time { when you should leave } is tomorrow.
 { → to leave }

你该离开的时间是明天。

The way { you should start it } is still undecided.
 { → to start it }

你该如何行动尚未决定。

第四，由关系副词 why 引导的形容词从句只能压缩成 for +ing，不可压缩成不定式，例如：

The reason { why we should do it } is perfectly clear.
 { → for doing it }

我们为何要这样做的理由是十分清楚的。

第五，形容词从句的关系代词如果跟介词搭配，那么，压缩成不定式时，介词必须保留，例如：

She has a lot of things { that she should attend to.
 → to attend to.

她有很多事要处理。

He is looking for a room { which he can live in.
 → to live in.

他正在找房子住。

第六，谓语动词是被动语态的形容从句也可以压缩成不定式的被动式。这种形式跟主动式有时在意思上有明显差别，例如：

There are several people { who have to } be consulted.
 → to

有很多人可以商量。

There is nothing to see.

没有什么值得一看。

There is nothing to be seen.

看不见什么东西。

第七，形容词从句压缩成不定式时，如果要强调动作行为者，可以用 for 引出，例如：

There are several letters { which the manager should sign.
 → for the manager to sign.

有好几封公函需要经理签字。

He gave order { that the visitor be shown in.
 → for the visitor to be shown in.

他发出指示，要来访者进来。

7.5 状语从句的压缩

状语从句可以压缩成-ing、-ed、不定式以及其他形式。下面我们按状语从句的类别来对压缩形式进行讨论。

第一，一般时间状语的压缩，例如：

{ When we opened
 → Opening
 → On opening
 → When opening } the cupboard, we found the box inside.

打开柜子，我们发现那盒子在里面。

第二，同时时间状语的压缩，例如：

{ While I was trying to open
 → While trying to open
 → In trying to open } the cupboard, I broke the key.

在试图打开柜子时，我弄断了钥匙。

第三，紧接时间状语从句的压缩，例如：

{ As soon as he arrived,
 → On arriving,
 → Upon his arrival, } he began to work.

他人一到，就开始工作。

第四，先后时间状语从句可以压缩成下列形式：

He was an engineer after $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{he was in the army.} \\ \longrightarrow \text{being in the army.} \end{array} \right.$

服役之后，他当了工程师。

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{After we sat} \\ \longrightarrow \text{After sitting} \\ \longrightarrow \text{Having sat} \end{array} \right\}$ here in the sun for two hours, we were thirsty.

在太阳下坐了两个小时后，我们渴得要命。

第五，因状语从句可以压缩成多种形式，请看下列例子：

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Since I had no answer} \\ \longrightarrow \text{Having had no answer} \end{array} \right\}$ I wrote again.

因为收到回音，我便再写信。

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Because his job was done,} \\ \longrightarrow \text{His job done,} \end{array} \right\}$ he went home.

他回家了，因为事已办完。

I was shocked $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{because I found your grandpa dead.} \\ \longrightarrow \text{to find your grandpa dead.} \end{array} \right.$

得知你祖父去世，我不由大吃一惊。

He went $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{because he was curious about it.} \\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \longrightarrow \text{out of} \\ \longrightarrow \text{because of} \end{array} \right\} \end{array} \right\}$ curiosity.

仅仅因为好奇，他才去的。

第六，条件状语从句可以压缩成多种形式，例如：

{ If it had not been for }
 { → But for } your help, we should have starved.
 { → Without }

没有你的援助，我们早已饿死。

{ If weather is unfavorable, }
 { → In the event of unfavorable weather } I'll change my plan.

倘若天气不好，我就改变计划。

It would hurt us { if we acted hastily. }
 { → to act hastily. }

做事草率，足以引起苦恼。

We shall sail on Monday { if the weather permits. }
 { → weather permitting. }

如果天气好，我们星期一启航。

{ If they were seen from a plane }
 { → Seen from a plane } the fields would look like a sea.

若从飞机上看，田野就像大海。

{ Once it were lost, }
 { → Once lost, } it would be hard to find.

一旦遗失，就找不到了。

第七，让步状语从句可以压缩成下列形式：

{ Although I was invited, }
 { → Although invited, } I won't go.
 { → Even if invited, }

科学要控制世界，就非研究世界不可。

He went to the Academy of Science { that he might study physics.
 → for the purpose of studying physics.

他去科学院研究物理学。

第九，结果状语从句可以压缩成下列形式：

The weather was so cold { that it froze the river.
 → as to freeze the river.

天气很冷，河水结冰。

He worked { so hard that he died.
 → himself to death.

他劳累过度而死。

7.6 并列句和主从复合句的特殊压缩

并列句和主从复合句还可以压缩成不带动词成分的短语。上面个别例子已说明这一情况。这里再补充几种特殊的压缩形式。

第一，并列句中的一个分句可以压缩成一个名词短语，例如：

He was an excellent speaker and he was never at a loss for words.

→ An excellent speaker, he was never at a loss for words.

他是个杰出的演说家，绝对不会词穷。

第二，由 when, while, if, although 四个连接词引导的从句可以压缩成短语，例如：

When you are in Rome, do as the Romans do.

→ When in Rome, do as the Romans do.

入国问俗。

{ While he was still at school } he wrote his first novel.
→ While still at school

还在学校念书时，他就写了一部小说。

{ If you are in doubt, } ask me.
→ If in doubt,

如有疑问，就来问我。

{ Although he was a lawyer, } he became a great soldier.
→ Although a lawyer,

虽然是律师出身，他成了一个伟大的战士。

第三，通过词的转换来压缩状语从句，例如：

{ When you arrive at your hotel, } please phone me.
→ On arrival at your hotel,

到达旅社后就给我打电话。

{ While you are absent, } I'll do that for you.
→ During your absence,

你不在时，我会为你办这件事的。

第 8 章 常见的句法错误

8.1 引言

无论说话还是写文章，人们最忌文理不通的毛病。一篇很好的演讲或文章，如果出现句法错误，那就大煞风景了。英语是一种重形合的语言，句子结构混乱，势必造成文理不通。为了避免这种现象，将中国学生由于受母语的干扰而常犯的句法错误进行归纳分析，这是十分必要的。当然在启蒙阶段，为了促使学生排除心理干扰，作为教师，也不必吹毛求疵。但等学生英语入门之后，特别是到了高级阶段或写作阶段，就必须严格要求。培根说得好：“读书使人充实，讨论使人机智，写作使人准确”。笔者根据多年的教学经验，将中国学生因受母语的影响而常犯的英语结构错误归纳为 10 类：主谓不合，称代错格，照应不妥，比较失调，词序不顺，前后矛盾，分离无依，苟简残缺，堆砌费解，省略不当。下面按顺序对有关问题进行讨论。

8.2 主谓不合

按照英语语法规则，谓语动词在人称和数方面必须跟主语保持一致。但英语有些名词、代词及其词组，在人称和数方面有特殊要求。不熟悉这些要求，就会犯主谓不合的错误。这些特殊要求如下：

第一，由 *and* 并列的主语一般接复数动词谓语，但也有一些例外。比如，并列主语前面如果有 *every* 或 *each* 等修饰语，或者并列后的词组本身被视为一个整体，就应当接单数动词谓语，例如：

误：Every man and women in the club are eligible to vote.

正：Every man and women in the club is eligible to vote.

俱乐部的每个男女成员都有选举权。

误：In youth his end and aim were a college education.

正: In youth his end and aim was a college education.

他年轻时的志向是上大学。

第二, 两个名词或代词如果是由 with, together with, in company with, accomplished by, as well as, including, no less than, an addition to 等连接,乍看起来似乎是复数,实际上,后一个名词或代词构成修饰语或插入语,而非并列关系。因此,动词谓语取决于前一个名词或代词是单数还是复数,例如:

误: Mrs. Felton with her three daughters are spending the summer in Italy.

正: Mrs. Felton with her three daughters is spending the summer in Italy.

费尔顿夫人同她3个女儿正在意大利度夏。

误: The captain, as well as the coaches, were disappointed in the team.

正: The captain, as well as the coaches, was disappointed in the team.

不仅是教练,就连队长,都对全队感到失望。

第三,由 or, either...or..., neither...nor..., not only...but also...等词语连接的名词或代词作主语时,要采取“就近原则”,即谓语动词的单复数与较近的名词或代词保持一致,例如:

误: Neither you nor he have my permission.

正: Neither you nor he has my permission.

你和他都未经我本人允许。

误: Does you or he know it?

正: Do you or he know it?

你和他谁知道这件事?

第四,集体名词 school, class, team, company, committee, jury, flock, herd, squad, regiment, nation 等具有双重意义,因此,动词谓语的单复数取决于词义或上下文,例如:

误: Our team are victorious.

正: Our team is victorious.

我们队胜利了。

误: The team is all out.

正: The team are all out.

队员们都外出了。

第五, 不定代词 most (of), none (of), some (of), half (of), the rest (of), the remainder (of), the balance (of) 等构成的短语, 其单复数取决于后面的名词或代词是单数还是复数; 如果是跟集体名词结合, 其单复数取决于词义或上下文, 例如:

误: Ten in our class is Arabs and the remainder is Germans.

正: Ten in our class are Arabs and the remainder are Germans.

我们班有 10 个阿拉伯人, 其余是德国人。

误: Half of the audience was foreigners.

正: Half of the audience were foreigners.

一半观众是外国人。

误: Half of the road are being resurfaced.

正: Half of the road is being resurfaced.

这条路的一半在翻修。

8.3 称代错格

英语名词, 尤其是代词, 有主格、宾格、所有格之分, 而且每种格都有自己的词形变化; 汉语却没有这种变化。中国学生不注意这些差异就会出现错格的毛病, 现分析如下。

第一, 英语代词作主语补足语(即传统语法所谓“表语”)时, 在标准书面语和正式场合中, 宜用主格。而在口语或非正式场合中, 常用宾格。我们必须分清场合用格, 例如:

非正式: It's me.

正式: It is I.

是我。

第二，代词在宾语补足语中用宾格。当这种句子转换成被动式时，原来的宾语补足语就转换成主语补足语。两种结构不可混淆。下面是由于混淆两种结构造成的错误：

误：They believed me to be he.

正：They believed me to be him.

他们以为我是他。

误：I am supposed to be him.

正：I am supposed to be he.

我被当成了他。

第三，关系代词和疑问代词同样有正式与非正式之分。在句型转换时也要注意格的变化。请看下列例句：

非正式：Who shall I send it to ?

正 式：Whom shall I sent it to ?

要我把这交给谁？

误：Tell me whom he is.

正：Tell me who he is.

告诉我他是谁。

误：He told it to whoever he met.

正：He told it to whomever he met.

这件事他逢人便说。

误：Whom am I supposed to be ?

正：Who am I supposed to be ?

把我当成谁啦？

第四，关系代词的错格常由于受“we know”，“I supposed”，“I think”，“I believe”等插入语的干扰而引起。我们应当排除干扰，理清句子结构，例如：

误: This party presented a candidate whom we know was unfit to serve.

正: This party presented a candidate who we know was unfit to serve.

该党提出一个候选人, 大家知道, 其实他不适合。

第五, 名词和代词作同位语时, 应当与先行词同格, 否则就会出现错格的现象, 例如:

误: She gave her guests, Doris and I, a weekend party.

正: She gave her guests, Doris and me, a weekend party.

她为客人, 也就是多丽斯和我, 举行了周末晚会。

误: They, him and his sister, have returned to college.

正: They, he and his sister, have returned to college.

他们, 也就是他和他姐姐, 已经返校。

8.4 照应不妥

英语要求代词与其先行词相照应。先行词必须明确, 代词所指应当一目了然。照应不妥, 就会产生歧义。照应不妥有下面一些情况:

第一, 关系代词 *which* 一般应有明确的先行词, 否则照应不妥, 意思含糊, 例如:

含糊句: He confessed that he had lied, which was just what we wanted.

改正: He confessed that he had lied and that was just what we wanted.

他坦白说他说了谎, 这是我们希望他要做的。

第二, 当 *this* 或 *that* 指前面所表达的意思时, 最好重复原意, 否则容易造成意思含糊, 例如:

含糊句: He has always tried his best in spite of handicap. This accounts for his success.

改正: He has always tried his best in spite of handicap. This persistence accounts for his success.

尽管有障碍，但他总是尽力而为。这种持之以恒的精神就是他成功的原因。

第三，一般语法书都谈到 they, you, it 等代词可以泛指一般人或事物。但是在正式文体中，我们应当尽量避免这种用法。因为运用不当，反而造成歧义，例如：

含糊句：In college they try to teach the student to think for himself.

改正：College instructors try to teach the student to think for himself

Or: A college tries to teach a student to think for himself.

大学尽力教导学生独立思考。

含糊句：It tells here in this chapter about Columbus' fourth voyage.

改正：This chapter tells about Columbus' fourth voyage.

本章讲述哥伦布第四次航海。

第四，一个代词只能跟一个先行词照应，照应过多，也会产生歧义，例如：

含糊句：I wished I had brought my overcoat, for it had become colder and I needed it.

改正：When the weather became colder, I wished I had brought my overcoat, for I needed it.

天气渐冷，我把大衣带来该多好，因为我需要它。

第五，代词与先行词的位置要清楚，不要在两者之间插入乱章害意的词语，否则就会产生歧义，例如：

含糊句：He sat in the kitchen doing his housework, which was heated by a stove.

改正：He sat doing his housework in the kitchen, which was heated by a stove.

他坐在厨房做家务，那里有火炉取暖。

含糊句：While cleaning it out, John bumped his head on a beam in the cellar.

改正：While cleaning out the cellar, John bumped his head on a beam.

在清理地下室时，约翰的头碰在横梁上。

第六，代词的先行词必须突出，如果用代词去跟不重要的名词照应，也会造成结构混乱，意思含糊，例如：

含糊句：She is going to wear a long blue dress to the prom next week. It is her favorite color.

改正：The long dress she will wear to the prom next week will be blue—her favorite color.

她下周舞会上要穿的长裙是蓝色——她最喜欢的颜色。

含糊句：The headpiece was made from the hawk's feather, which he himself had killed.

改正：The headpiece was made from the feathers of the hawk which he had killed himself.

头饰是用他亲手射死的那只鹰的羽毛做成的。

8.5 比较失调

比较在两个或两个以上的人或事物中进行。比较的各项是相互依存的，没有比较对象和范围，比较就不能成立。英语形容词和副词有3种比较等级。不注意上述情况就会造成比较失调，下面逐一进行讨论。

第一，由于等级混淆而出现的失调，例如：

误：He is as taller as I am.

正：He is as tall as I am.

他和我一样高。

误：Jane the prettiest of the twins.

正：Jane is the prettier of the twins.

这对孪生姐妹中，珍妮漂亮些。

第二，主格名词或代词只能与同格名词或代词比较，不能错格，下面是常见的一种错格现象：

误: I like him more than her.

正: I like him more than she.

我比她更喜欢他。

第三, 一个人或一事物跟其他一群或一批中的任何一个进行比较, 必须用 **any other** 或 **anyone else**, 否则便不合逻辑, 例如:

误: Bob is stronger than any man on the team.

正: Bob is stronger than any other man on the team.

鲍勃比队里其他任何人都强壮。

误: He studies harder than anyone in the class.

正: He studies harder than anyone else in the class.

在班上他学习比其他任何人更刻苦。

第四, 英语比较要求比较对象在结构上对等。需要替代词语时, 不能随意省略; 无须加替代词语时, 又不要画蛇添足。这一点跟汉语有差别。请看如下例子:

误: The climate of Kunming is warmer than Changsha.

正: The climate of Kunming is warmer than that of Changsha.

昆明的气候比长沙温暖。

误: It is warmer in Kunming than that in Changsha.

正: It is warmer in Kunming than in Changsha.

昆明的气候比长沙温暖。

8.6 词序不顺

修饰语和被修饰语之间的关系十分密切。这种密切的关系取决于它们之间的位置。所谓词序不顺, 就是指位置的差错。由于英汉两个民族的思维模式不同, 位置关系存在一定的差异。下面逐一进行讨论。

第一, 在名词词组中, 如果一系列形容词修饰一个名词, 英语应当按这样

的顺序排列：限制词—大小—长短—高低—形状—新旧—颜色—国别—名词修饰语—其他。但是汉语则往往是按修饰语和被修饰语之间构成词组时的习惯来排列。如果不注意这种差别，就会在英语造句时出现词序不顺的错误，例如：

误：He is a Chinese famous writer.

正：He is a famous Chinese writer.

他是中国一位名作家。

误：There is a round, brown, big jug on the table.

正：There is a big, round and brown jug on the table.

桌上有一把圆圆的棕色大壶。

第二，名词修饰语一般放在该名词的前面，但英语也有些习惯用法，将修饰语后置。修饰后置主要有如下5种情况。(1)当 here, there, home 等作修饰语时；(2)当中心词前面有 some, any, every 等时；(3)当 available, possible, enough 等词作修饰语时；(4)当某些分词作修饰语时；(5)当具有主语补足语力量的形容词作修饰语时。有些英语词典，如《当代朗文词典》，对上述一些惯用法有所描述。中国学生应当注重这些习惯用法，以避免词序不顺的错误，例如：

误：He is on his home way.

正：He is on his way home.

他正在归途中。

误：There is available water at the hut.

正：There is water available at the hut.

在那茅舍处可弄到水。

误：He lay there like a shot man.

正：He lay there like a man shot.

他像个中了弹的人，躺在那儿。

误：He was the only awake person at the moment.

正：He was the only person awake at the moment.

他是当时惟一醒着的人。

第三, 英语频度副词一般放在动词之前, 但如果 SVC 句型的系动词是 to be 或者句中有助动词或情态动词, 频度副词则往往放在系动词和助动词或情态动词后面, 否则就会词序不顺, 例如:

误: Tom cycles to school usually.

正: Tom usually cycles to school.

汤姆通常骑自行车上学。

误: I always am at home on Sundays.

正: I am always at home on Sundays.

我星期天总在家。

误: They seldom can find time for reading.

正: They can seldom find time for reading.

他们很少有时间看书。

第四, 英语中 almost, even, nearly, hardly, only 等常用副词十分灵活, 几乎可以置于句中任何位置而强调其后面的词。我们应当根据所强调词来选择其位置。以 nearly, only 为例, 请看位置不同, 意思就不同:

He nearly lost 100 dollars last night.

他昨夜差点丢了 100 美元。

He lost nearly 100 dollars last night.

他昨夜丢了钱, 大约 100 美元。

This book has only the answer to your question.

本书为你提供答案之外再无别的内容。

Only this book has the answer to your question.

只有这本书才有你那个答案。

第五, 一般副词或词组作状语, 都必须跟中心词摆好位置, 使意思明确; 切忌张冠李戴, 例如:

病句: He said he would like to begin by discussing the three plays already mentioned separately.

改正: He said he would like to begin by discussing separately the three plays already mentioned.

他说他想先分别讨论3个已提到的剧本。

病句: Later in the evening the family trimmed the tree along with a few friends.

改正: Later in the evening the family, along with a few friends, trimmed the tree.

很晚的时候,全家人跟几个朋友一起修剪那棵树。

8.7 前后矛盾

句子要前后连贯,不然很容易出现文理不通,前后矛盾的现象。主从复合句和并列句结构复杂,更容易出现前后矛盾的问题,因此本书着重讨论这两种句子常出现的一些前后矛盾的问题。

第一,主从复合句中,主句动词谓语的时态、语气、语态都要前后连贯。不注意这一点,就会出现前后矛盾的现象,例如:

病句: When I reached the pier, I saw that the boat was four feet lower than it was at high tide.

改正: When I reached the pier, I saw that the boat was four feet lower than it had been at high tide.

我到码头时,看见船所处的水位比原来涨潮时低了4英尺。

第二,句中,特别是在省略并列句中,动词的时态、语气、语态都要前后连贯,下面的句子都是因为前后不连贯而造成的前后矛盾:

病句: He drove the car into the side road and quickly turns off the motor.

改正: He drove the car into the side road and quickly turned off the motor.

他把车开到路旁,立即熄火。

病句: First build a fire and then you should make the coffee.

改正: First build a fire and then make the coffee.

先去生火,再煮咖啡。

病句: He drove the car into the garage and the motor was quickly stopped.

改正: He drove the car into the garage and quickly stopped the motor.

他把车开进车库, 立即熄火。

第三, 直接引语和间接引语在词序、称代、谓语动词的形式以及其他相关词语上是有一些差别的, 两者不能混淆。下面的句子就是因为混淆差别而造成的:

病句: She came over to me and asked whether I had talked to John and is he coming to the dance.

改正: She came over to me and asked whether I had talked to John and whether he was coming to the dance.

or:

She came over to asked me: "Have you talked to John ? Is he coming to the dance?"

她过来问我, 是不是我已同约翰谈过, 他究竟来不来参加舞会。

第四, 主从复句和并列句要做到条理清楚, 往往依靠连接词和衔接词语。这些词语都含有一定的语义, 误用这些词语就会造成前后矛盾, 例如:

病句: The shepherd picked up a rope and threw it around the wolf's neck, caught it.

改正: The shepherd picked up a rope, threw it around the wolf's neck and caught it.

牧羊人拿起套绳, 向前一扔, 套住狼的脖子, 将狼逮住了。

病句: Everyone agreed to his suggestion which we should hold a meeting to discuss the problems.

改正: Everyone agreed to his suggestion that we hold a meeting to discuss the problems.

大家同意他的建议: 开会讨论这些问题。

病句: I prefer to stay home; however I have a cold.

改正: I prefer to stay home; besides, I have a cold.

我宁愿呆在家里, 再说, 我又感冒了。

8.8 分离无依

英语动词有3种非谓语形式, 即: 不定式、-ed从句、-ing从句。它们在句子中充当各种成分。在运用动词非谓语形式时, 我们应当注意3点: (1)它们自身结构应当完整; (2)如果用作修饰语, 应当跟中心词密切配合; (3)在人称、时态、语气等方面必须符合逻辑, 跟主句保持一致。忽视以上3点, 就会产生分离无依的现象。下面我们逐一讨论中国学生在运用动词非谓语形式时常常出现的错误。

第一, 不定式符号与动词原形一般是不可分割的。在语法和修辞上, 凡分割的不定式称为“分裂不定式”; 在某些情况下虽说可以用, 但最好避免:

误: The boat seemed to hardly move.

正: The boat seemed hardly to move.

那船看来没有移动。

第二, 不定式的否定式要将 not, never 等否定词加在不定式前面, 不能随便改变位置, 不然就会造成错误或歧义, 例如:

误: I am sorry to have not told you about it before.

正: I am sorry not have told you about it before.

对不起, 事先没有告诉你。

比较下列两句:

I am not anxious to go.

我并不是迫不及待地要去。

I am anxious not to go.

我并不想去。

第三, 动词不定式的逻辑主语要跟句子的主句一致, 否则便成了“分离无依”不定式, 例如:

误: To succeed, the process must be understood.

正: To succeed, you must understand the process.

要想成功, 就必须搞清程序。

误: To escape the heat, the trip should be made in summer.

正: To escape the heat, you should make the trip in summer.

要避暑, 那就在夏天出门旅游。

第四, 当-ed 从句和-ing 从句作状语时, 更要注意逻辑主语跟主句的主语一致, 否则就会产生所谓“垂悬分词”(the dangling participle), 例如:

误: Being in a cage, I was not afraid of the lion.

正: Since the lion was in a cage, I was not afraid of him

or:

The lion, being in a cage, did not frighten me.

狮子在笼中, 我不怕。

误: The water was impure, caused by bad drainage.

正: The impurity of the water was caused by bad drainage.

水质不纯是因为排水不良造成的。

误: Seeing from the hill, the town looks magnificent.

正: Seen from the hill, the town looks magnificent.

从山上看, 这城市很壮丽。

第五, 介词短语加-ing 从句作状语, 其逻辑主语也要跟句子的主语一致, 否则也会产生分离无依的短语, 例如:

误: After inspecting my passport, I was permitted to go on board the ship.

正: After inspecting my passport, they permitted me to go on board the ship.

护照一经检查, 便允许我上船。

误: In alighting from the car, my ankle was turned.

正: In alighting from the car, I turned my ankle.

我下车时扭伤了足踝。

8.9 苟简残缺

我们说话和写文章要求简洁，但必须在保证结构完整，意思明确的基础上求简洁，决不能苟简而造成句子残缺不全。在英语修辞中，残缺不全的句子叫“残句”(fragment)。一些作家有时虽用残句达到某种修辞效果，如表现意识流等，但在正式文体中不宜采用，残句的出现有下面几种情况。

第一，使从句独立成句而造成的残句，例如：

残：This, they realized, was his home. Where everyone was subdued and on his guard.

全：This, they realized, was his home, where everyone was subdued and on his guard.

他们明白，这就是他家；在家里，人人都得屈从，事事都要小心。

残：We won the election. Though the opposition was strong.

全：We won the election, though the opposition was strong.

尽管遇到强手，我们还是在选举中获胜。

第二，本来是两句话，硬凑一句反而致残，例如：

残：By the time he reached home Lindbergh had become a national hero. Which is something that will never happen to me.

全：By the time he reached home, Lindbergh had become a national hero. That is an experience I am never likely to have.

林德伯格归来时早已成了民族英雄。这是我望尘莫及的。

第三，滥用独词句造成残缺，例如：

残：Then she went on nervously with her work. Knitting.

全：Then she went on nervously with her knitting.

然后她继续紧张不安地编织。

第四，使不定式独立成句而致残，例如：

残：The sociologist said that education of women should adapted to their future needs. To keep them from being frustrated.

全：The sociologist said that, to keep women from being frustrated, they should be given an education fit to their future needs.

这位社会学家说，为了不使妇女灰心丧气，可以让她们受点教育，以适应未来的需要。

第五，将其他词语独立成句而致残，例如：

残：Then we came to the waterfall. The most beautiful sight on our journey.

全：Then we came to the waterfall, the most beautiful sight on our journey.

然后我们来到大瀑布，旅途中最壮丽的风景。

残：I thought she was dressed for a dance party. But soon changed my mind.

全：I thought she was dressed for a dance party, but I soon changed my mind.

当初，我还以为她这样梳妆打扮是要去参加舞会，但我立即改变了看法。

8.10 堆砌费解

堆砌是一种很坏的文风，这是想玩弄词藻，故作高深而造成的。英语强调平实的文风，中国学生要养成这种平实的文风，切勿堆砌词藻。我们在下面通过典型的例子来进行分析。

第一，由于重复主语、宾语、否定词或其他词语而造成堆砌现象，例如：

误：My uncle he came home yesterday.

正：My uncle came home yesterday.

我叔叔昨天回来了。

误：Most of the boys were nearly all college students.

正：Most of the boys were college students.

大多数男孩是大学生。

第二，在并列句和主从句中任意增加或删除连接词而造成堆砌，例如：

误：The lecturer is a nerve specialist, and who was a classmate of my father's at college.

正：The lecturer, who was a classmate of my father's at college, is a nerve specialist.

这位演讲家原是我父亲在大学的同学，现在是神经科专家。

误：I entered the city I smelled the gasoline refineries.

正：As I entered the city, I smelled the gasoline refineries.

我一走进这个城市，就闻到了炼油厂的气味。

第三，复合句里再套用复合句时，如果省略连接词，误用连接词或滥用标点，也会造成堆砌，例如：

误：They did not win the game so far as I could see, they did not even try.

正：They did not win the game; so far as I could see, they didn't even try.

他们没赢，依我来看，他们甚至连赢的打算都没有。

误：My chum told me that I had won the scholarship, and I was overjoyed.

正：As my chum told me that I had won the scholarship, I was overjoyed.

当我朋友告诉我说我赢得了奖金，我万分高兴。

第四，并列句中，如果滥用连接词或标点，也会造成堆砌现象，例如：

误：I knew him as soon as I saw him I did not say a word.

正：I knew him as soon as I saw him, but I did not say a word.

我一见到他就认出来了，但我一声不吭。

误：Do as I say not as I do.

正：Do as I say, not as I do.

按吩咐去做，不必效仿我。

第五，由于乱合或滥并而造成的堆砌现象，例如：

误: We are going to the countryside this summer, and we are going to visit my grandmother.

正: We are going to the countryside this summer to visit our grandmother.
今年夏天, 我们要去乡下看祖母。

误: I started to cook my first meal and I became frightened so I frantically turned the oven off and then I cried.

正: When I started to cook my first meal, I became so frightened that I frantically turned the oven off and cried.
当我第一次做饭时, 我惊恐万状, 只得慌乱地关上炉子哭了一场。

8.11 省略不当

为了避免重复, 使句子简洁通顺, 省略是必要的。任何语言都有一些省略规则, 但我们不要忘记省略的基本原则: 只能省略那些不至于造成逻辑不清, 语义不全的词语。同时, 英汉语的省略规则不尽相同: 英语需要省略的, 汉语可能要重复; 英语需要重复的, 汉语可能要省略, 两者不能混淆。下面来分析一些实例。

第一, 因随意省略英语动词而造成的错误, 例如:

误: She had not and never will recover.

正: She had not recovered and never will recover.

她还未康复, 只怕永远康复不了。

误: I have not written the letter, nor am I going to.

正: I have not written the letter, nor am I going to write it.

我没写信, 也不打算写。

误: The house was painted, and the rooms papered again.

正: The house was painted, and the rooms were papered again.

屋子粉刷一新, 房间也重新裱糊了。

第二，因随意省略介词而造成的错误，例如：

误：I have always been a great sports fan, especially baseball.

正：I have always been a great sports fan, especially of baseball.

我一直是个球迷，特别是个垒球迷。

误：I have no understanding or interest in golf.

正：I have no understanding of golf and no interest in it.

我懂高尔夫球，也对它不感兴趣。

第三，因随意省略连接词而造成的错误，例如：

误：Do you realize by neglecting your present opportunities you are handicapping yourself for life ?

正：Do you realize that by neglecting your present opportunities you are handicapping yourself for life ?

放弃现有的机会就等于妨碍自己的谋生之道，你懂吗？

误：Studying my lessons, I went to sleep.

正：While studying my lessons, I went to sleep.

我做着功课就入睡了。

第四，在比较句中，因省略相关词语而造成错误，例如：

误：I have missed mother more than you.

正：I have missed mother more than I missed you.

我想你，更想母亲。

误：It was warmer in Kunming than Changsha.

正：It was warmer in Kunming than in Changsha.

昆明的天气比长沙温暖。

第9章 辞达五要则

9.1 引言

孔子论文而曰：“辞达而已”，也就是文句要通顺易懂，能表达意思就行了。不必故作高深，去用奇词奥句。现代汉语的辞达要则是：意义明确；伦次通顺；词语平匀；安排稳密(陈望道语)。

英语的发展虽经历了几次重大变化，但到了17世纪逐步规范化、标准化。因此无论是词汇、句法还是篇章，简洁达意成为英美人说话和作文的修辞原则。从句法结构本身来讲，英语一些修辞学家总结归纳出英语辞达的五大原则：思想统一，结构紧凑，意思确切，中心突出，字音悦耳。我们在本章进行逐项讨论。

9.2 思想统一

一般说来，句子是一个语法结构完整，能表达思想的语言单位。为了保证思想统一，意思完整，英语讲究以下修辞要求。

第一，主题的单一化。所谓主题的单一化就是不要把与主题无关的东西凑在一起，而要做到汉语修辞家所说的“没有闲事杂物来害意”。下面的句子实际上有3层意思，由于强凑一处，破坏了主题单一的原则。

病句：As we were driving out into the country yesterday, we met a young man wearing a golf suit, and we passed a car that was broken down, and on our way home we stopped at Mr. Beck's to get some fresh flowers and vegetables.

改正：As we were driving out into the country yesterday, we met a young man wearing a golf suit. Later we passed a car that was broken down. On our way home, we stopped at Mr. Beck's to get some fresh flowers and

vegetables.

昨天，我们驱车下乡，途中遇到一位穿高尔夫球装的青年。后来车子经过一辆抛锚的小车。在回家的路上，在贝克商店买了些鲜花和蔬菜。

第二，词与词之间，结构严密，关系清楚，否则就会影响达意，例如：

病句：I am not surprised that their team lost the game, they were poorly trained and were over-confident.

改正：I am not surprised that their team lost the game, for they were poorly trained and were over-confident.

他们输球我并不感意外，因为他们训练差劲，又过分自信。

病句：I employed a detective, by his aid I recovered the ring.

改正：I employed a detective, and by his aid I recovered the ring.

我雇了个侦探，靠他的帮助找回了戒指。

第三，为了确保句子思想统一，不要随意改变主语。这一点跟汉语修辞不一样，请注意下面的例子及汉语的表达方式：

病句：The vessel made for the shore, and the passengers soon crowded into the boats, and the beach was reached in safety, and the inhabitants of the island received them with the utmost kindness.

改正：The vessel having made for the shore, the passengers soon crowded into the boats and safely reached the beach, where they were received with the utmost kindness by the inhabitants of the island.

大船驶近海岸，乘客涌上小艇，平安到达海滩；岛民十分热情，前来迎接。

第四，为了使句子思想统一，意思完整，就不要节外生枝，乱加滥添。下面的病句就是因为画蛇添足而造成的：

病句：This ballad which like most ballads the author is unknown.

改正：This ballad, like most ballads, is by an unknown author.

这首民歌像其他民歌一样，是无名氏的作品。

病句: It was due to this lack of an iron industry that led the South to defeat.

改正: It was this lack of an iron industry that led the South to defeat.

导致南方失败的原因就是没有钢铁工业。

病句: It was not until the next day did I learned the truth.

改正: Not until the next day did I learn the truth.

直到第二天我才知道真相。

第五, 为了确保句子的思想统一, 意思完整, 既不要乱合滥并, 也不要胡劈滥砍。不要写出修辞上忌讳的所谓“零言碎语”(choppy sentences), 例如:

病句: The officer took out his pistol. He calmly pointed it at the prisoner's head.

He then pulled the trigger.

改正: After taking out his pistol, the officer calmly pointed it at the prisoner's head and pulled the trigger.

那警官掏出手枪, 沉着地瞄准罪犯的头, 扣下扳机。

9.3 结构紧凑

结构紧凑主要是指句子的一个成分跟另一个成分不仅要关系分明, 而且排列顺序要符合规则和习惯。我们在前一章已谈到一些松散的句子, 这里再系统地谈谈修辞要则。

第一, 为了使句子结构紧凑, 力求做到修饰语靠紧中心词, 否则结构松散, 例如:

病句: I sat watching the men play golf on the front porch.

改正: I sat on the front porch watching the men play golf.

我坐在门口看他们打高尔夫球。

病句: He carried a bag of peanuts in his hat, which he fed to the elephants.

改正: In his hat he carried a bag of peanuts, which he fed to the elephants.

他帽子里揣着一袋花生，去喂象群。

第二，为了确保并列句的紧凑连贯，使用关联词时要注意被连接的两个成分在结构上的对等，下面的病句就是结构不对等造成的：

病句：Not only I saw him but heard him also.

改正：I not only saw him but heard him also.

我不仅看见他，还听到他说话。

病句：He neither came by train nor by automobile.

改正：He came neither by train nor by automobile.

他既不是乘火车来的，也不是乘汽车来的。

第三，要避免分离无依现象，注意照应关系(详见第8章)。

第四，为了使句子结构紧凑，要注意各从句之间在时态、语气、语态上保持一致(详见第8章)。

第五，为了使句子结构紧凑，既要防止滥用连接词造成堆砌现象(详见第8章)也不要滥用逗号，造成“连排句”(run-on sentences)，例如：

病句：We will take Flight 217 to New York, it is the quickest flight.

改正：We will take Flight 217 to New York. It is the quickest flight.

我们乘217次航班去纽约。这是最快的航班。

病句：It was late in the forth quarter, the score was six to nothing.

改正：It was late in the fourth quarter. The score was six to nothing.

第4局已近尾声。比分6:0。

9.4 意思确切

英语表达方式多，句子灵活多变，这给思想交流带来很多方便。但是这也给学习者带来很多麻烦。不熟悉句法和惯用法就难以掌握句子的灵活性，甚至

造成歧义句。为了避免歧义句，在初学阶段或写作中，我们要力求句子意思确切。下面谈谈具体的措施。

第一，删除概念重复的词语，例如：

病句：The land has been dried up for many days, and there is no water to be found.

改正：The land has been dried up for many days.
土地已干涸许多天了。

病句：He returned back after a long absence.

改正：He returned after a long absence.
离家多年后他终于回来了。

第二，在正式文体中，不宜省略关系代词，例如：

非正式：The work he has begun is not yet completed.

正 式：The work which he has begun is not yet completed.
他已着手的工作尚未完成。

第三，不宜让两个介词共一个宾语，例如：

劣：He passed by, but did not go into, the house.

佳：He passed by the house, but did not go into it.
他过门而不入。

第四，不宜用虚词(介词或副词)作句子的结尾词，例如：

劣：That is the thing we have been speaking of.

佳：That is the thing of which we have been speaking.
这就是我们一直在讨论的事情。

第五，避免不合逻辑或不对称的排比句，例如：

劣：The monkeys keep patrons laughing, riding bicycles and balancing on huge balls.

佳：The patrons are kept laughing as they watch the monkeys riding bicycles

and balancing on huge balls.

主顾们笑着观看猴子骑车、耍大球。

第六，从英语修辞来看，复句的意思比并列句确切；主动语态所表达的意思比被动语态所表达得确切。所有这些，就靠自己按语境来把握了。

9.5 中心突出

在一句话中，总有一些最能表达中心思想的词语，我们通过合理的安排，突出这些词语，就可以加强语气，给听者或读者以深刻的印象。为此，我们可以采用下列修辞方式。

第一，将关键词语置于句首或句尾，例如：

劣：Many a man has sacrificed his life for wealth, it is true.

佳：Many a man, it is true, has sacrificed his life for wealth.

许多人为财而亡，这可是事实。

第二，不按自然词序而将关键词置于句首，例如：

Joe, his name is.

乔，这是他的名字。

Relaxation you call it!

解闷呀，你还这样说呢！

Really good cocktails they made at that hotel!

绝妙的鸡尾酒，就出自这家旅店。

In London I was born, and in London I'll die.

伦敦，生我之地也；伦敦，也将是葬我之所。

第三，为了突出中心，可以将并列句改成复合句，将重要内容放在主句，

例如:

原句: My train was late, and I missed my class.

改成: Because my train was late, I missed my class.

因为火车晚点, 所以我误课了。

第四, 重复修辞格也是突出中心的一种手段。在英语中常用的重复修辞格有如下 6 种。

(1) 首语重复法, 例如:

Where is the wise ? Where is the scribe ? Where is the dispute of this world ?

圣人何在? 法律何在? 公理何在?

(2) 倒复法, 例如:

Ask not what your country can do for you; ask what you can do for your country.

不要问你们的国家能为你们做什么; 而要问你们能为国家做什么。

(3) 首尾重复法, 例如:

Like knows like.

英雄识英雄。

(4) 顶针重复法, 例如:

The fountains mingle with the river,

And the river with the ocean.

泉水总是汇入江河,

江河又汇流入海。(雪莱:《爱情的哲学》)

(5) 结尾重复法, 例如:

If slavery is not wrong, nothing is wrong.

奴隶制若无错, 孰能有错?

(6) 同形异义重复法, 例如:

She was a wife who was a wife indeed.

她真是位贤妻良母。

第五，层进修辞格也是突出中心的有效手段，例如：

Since concord was lost, friendship was lost; fidelity was lost, liberty was lost—all was lost.

和睦既已丧失，友谊也便丧失，忠义也便丧失，自由也便丧失——一切丧失殆尽。

9.6 字音悦耳

语言既要求形美、意美，还要求音美。一句话要达意通顺，不仅讲究遣词造句正确，结构紧凑，修辞得体，还要注意字音悦耳。下面我们来谈谈英语在语音方面的修辞规则。

第一，要注意节奏，避免拗口，下面的句子因拗口而影响音美：

劣：King James's courtiers' cloaks were worn short.

佳：The courtiers of King James wore their cloaks short.

詹姆斯王的朝臣都穿短褂。

第二，要避免在一句话中随意重复一个词，例如：

劣：He ordered the captain to order the soldiers to preserve good order.

佳：He directed the captain to see that the soldiers preserve good order.

他命令上尉去维护士兵的秩序。

第三，要避免用同音词，例如：

劣：I cannot understand how a man of his standing can take such a stand on the matter.

佳：I cannot understand how a person of his reputation can hold such views on the matter.

我真不明白，这样有声望的人还会对此事持这种观点。

第四，在写散文时，不要去押韵，否则弄巧成拙，例如：

劣：He was suffering, he said, from a cold in his head.

佳：He was suffering, he told me, from a cold in his head.

他说，他头有点伤风感冒。

第五，尽量采用拟声词(onomatopoeia)增加生动性，例如：

Our chains are forged! Their clanking may be heard on the plains of Boston!

我们的锁链已铸成！听，波士顿平原已传来那铿锵的声音！

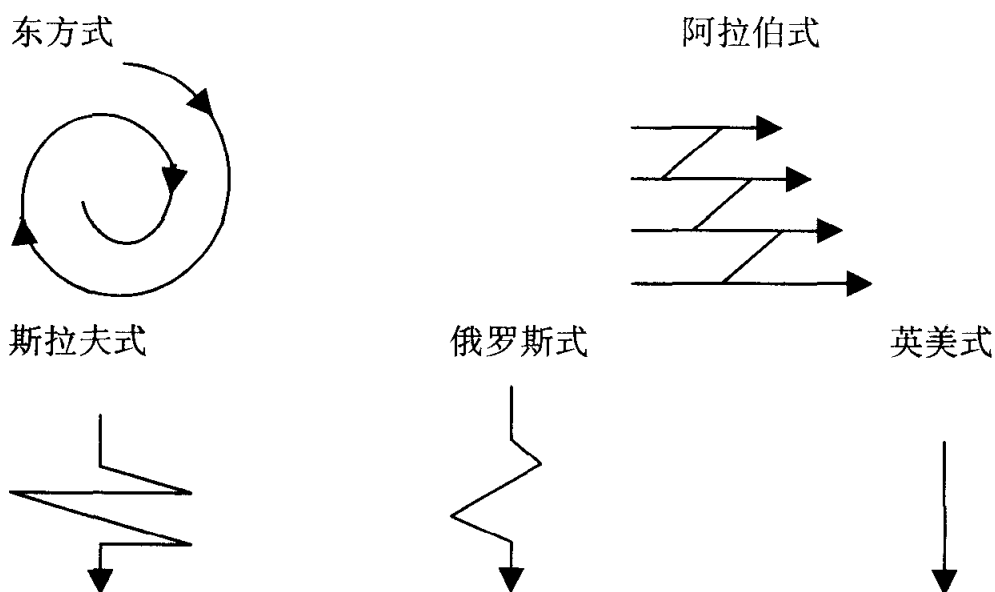
For a crowd is not a company, and faces are but a gallery of pictures, and talk but a tinkling cymbal where there is no love.

人多而知己少，那张张脸恰如画廊的一幅幅画像，观后即逝；而闲谈也像叮叮当当喧嚷一时的钹，并未留下友爱的余音。

第 10 章 篇章结构

10.1 引言

语言是一套符号系统，但这套系统是有层次的。英语可以分成音位、音节、词素、词位、词组、从句、句子、句群、语篇等 9 个层次。最高层次就是语篇。作为语篇，其结构是随民族的思维方式来确定的。一些语篇学家将世界所有民族的思维方式归纳成 5 种模式：东方式、阿拉伯式、斯拉夫式、俄罗斯式、英美式。5 种模式如下图所示：



从图示我们不难看出，中国人的思维模式呈螺旋形，而英美人的思维模式呈直线形。所以英语语篇一般首先点明主题，然后围绕主题进行展发。这样一来，英语篇章结构常常靠四大要素构成：

- 主题 (theme);
- 展发式 (development);
- 形式连接 (cohesion);
- 语义连贯 (coherence)。

英语和汉语都要求四大要素，但英语是重形合的，而汉语则重意合。因此在形式连接这一要素上差异较大。所谓形式连接，又称衔接(见第4章)，是指语篇中各部分在语法结构或措辞上有联系，或两方面都有联系。这种联系可能存在于不同的句子之间，也可能存在于句子各部分之间。我们在本章就英语常用的展发模式及其形式连接进行讨论。

10.2 分类展发(Classification Development)

世间万物靠人依据某些共同性质进行分门别类，而易于理清和认识。例如生物学把一切生物分成动物界和植物界，再按“门、纲、目、科、属、种”进行细分。这样，任何一种生物就容易识别了。分类展发就是有条理地把具有共同性质的事物进行分类阐述的方式，例如：

范文(Text Model):

Resources are the basic inputs used in the production of goods and services, and they can be categorized under three main headings: land, capital and labor. Land includes not only the arable land used by the farmer and the city land used as building lots, but also the other gifts of nature that come with the land such as water, minerals found under the soil, sunlight which falls upon the soil, etc. Capital refers to the buildings, equipment, and other materials used in the productive process. And labor involves the physical and mental talents of human beings, applied to the production of goods and services.

连接手段(Cohesive Devices):

1) There be pattern

There are Y $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{types} \\ \text{kinds} \\ \text{classes} \\ \text{categories} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\}$ of X : A, B and C.

2) SV/ SVO patterns

X $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{consists of} \\ \text{falls into} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\}$ Y $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{types} \\ \text{finds} \\ \text{classes} \end{array} \right\}$: A, B and C.

X can be $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{made up of Y elements:} \\ \text{categorized under Y headings:} \\ \text{described in terms of:} \end{array} \right\}$ A, B and C.

10.3 时序展发 (Chronological Development)

时序展发是按时间先后来表述事件发生的过程,一般用于说明文和叙事文。有的叙事文(如小说)先交代故事结局或某些情节,然后会过来交代故事的开端和过程。这称为“倒叙”(back-flash)。时序展发的形式连接主要靠表示时间的词语,例如:

范文(Text Model):

To build your own sun-scope, get a carton and cut a hole in one side. Then paste white paper on the inside surface that you will be facing. After this punch a pinhole into the opposite side high enough so that the little shaft of light will miss your head. For an sharper image, however, you can make a better pinhole by cutting a one-inch-square hole in the carton, taping a piece of aluminum foil over this hole and making the pinhole in the foil. Finally, tape the box shut and cover all light leaks with black tape.

连接手段(Cohesive Devices):

1) Beginning:

to begin with first initially

2) Middle:

secondly, thirdly... next then subsequently before this
at the same time in the meantime after a while afterwards

3) End:

In due course at last in the long run lastly finally to conclude

to sum up

10.4 空间展发 (Spatial Development)

空间展发是说话人或作者取某一个视点，按空间位置对主题进行描述。例如，从整体到局部，从左到右，从上到下，由近及远，由远及近等。这种展发方式常用于说明文和描写文。空间展发的形式连接主要靠表示方位的词语，例如：

范文(Text Model):

As the Rift Valley sweeps northwards out of Kenya and into Ethiopia, it forms the spectacular Lake Turkana Basin. The long, shallow waters of the Lake, which stretches 155 miles north to south and up to 35 miles east to west, sparkle green in the tropical sun: someone called it the Jade Sea, a very apt name. At the south a barrier of small volcanic hills prevents the lake spreading further down into the arid lands of northern Kenya. From the west side rises the Rift Valley wall, a range of mountains with some peaks of more than 5,000 feet. This is the land of the Turkana people, a tall, elegant pastoral tribe. Beyond are the mountains and forests of Uganda. Pouring its silt-laden waters into the north end of the lake is the River Ome, a huge river that drains the Ethiopian highlands to the north with Kenya where it reaches the Jade Sea. Where the river reaches the lake the sudden barrier to its progress forces it to dump its burden of silt, so creating an enormous delta.

连接手段(Cohesive Devices):

1) Longitudinal and Cross

a) Static

$$X \quad \text{is} \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{before} \\ \text{in front of} \\ \text{behind} \\ \text{in the north of} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\} \quad Y.$$

b) Dynamic

$$X \text{ moves } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{along} \\ \text{down} \\ \text{through} \\ \text{across} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\} Y.$$

2) Vertical

a) Static

$$X \text{ is } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{above} \\ \text{over} \\ \text{on top of} \\ \text{below} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\} Y.$$

b) Dynamic

$$X \text{ moves } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{up} \\ \text{down} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\} Y.$$

10.5 定义展发(Definition Development)

定义展发是说话人或作者对某一事物的本质特征或某一概念的内涵和外延进行确切而简要的说明。定义展发必须具有 3 个基本要素：概念(concept)；类别(class)；特性(special features)。一般说来，类别划分得越细，定义就下得更确切。定义展发有两种方法：概念法(concepting)和命名法(naming)；常用于说明文和议论文，例如：

范文(Text Model):

Radar is an electronic device that is used for detection and location of objects. It operates by transmitting a particular type of wave-form, a pulse-modulated sine

wave, for example, and detects the nature of the echo signal. Radar is used to extend the capability of man's senses for environment, especially the sense of vision. The value of radar lies not in being a substitute for the eye, but in doing what the eye cannot do.

连接手段(Cohesive Devices):

1) Concepting:

X is a $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{kind} \\ \text{species} \\ \text{form} \\ \text{class} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\}$ of Y which...

2) Naming:

The $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{kind} \\ \text{species} \\ \text{form} \\ \text{class} \\ \text{etc.} \end{array} \right\}$ of X which... $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{is known as} \\ \text{is called} \end{array} \right\}$ Y.

10.6 举例展发(Exemplification Development)

举例展发是最简单的展发方式。为了说明一个问题,或阐述一个观点,说话人或作者举出一个或数个例子来进行论证。举例展发常用于说明文和议论文,例如:

范文(Text Model):

The forces of nature, whether directly or indirectly, play a very important part in the material progress of mankind. The two chief forces of nature are wind and water. For instance, sailing ships of all classes, from the large merchantman to the small fishing boat, depend still for their means of progress on the wind. Water has been similarly utilized. Running water is used to work the machinery that generates electricity. A conspicuous example of this is the Niagara Falls, which is now largely

used for this purpose.

连接手段(Cohesive Devices):

like such as for example for instance an example of
be illustrated by as illustrated by

10.7 比较展发(Comparison Development)

比较展发是把要说明的新事物跟大家比较了解的事物进行比较, 通过展示两者之间的共性, 来阐述事物的形式特征; 常用于说明文和议论文, 例如:

范文(Text Model):

All learning depends upon motivation, perception and exercises. The language learner's most important task is to internalized the basic patterns and to acquire a new system of language habits so that he can react automatically to the structural signals of the second language. This can be accomplished by drill. Theoretical study of a language does not necessarily improve your ability to speak. All this applies equally well to organic chemistry learning. Structure recognition and structure drawing must be automatic and accurate. The eye must learn to assemble all cues and size up just what has gone on in a given reaction—quickly as a matter of habit. Obviously achieving this proficiency will also require drill.

连接手段(Cohesive Devices):

both similar like also equally alike same in a similar way
by the same token by comparison likewise similarly

10.8 对比展发(Contrast Development)

跟比较不同, 对比展发是把两者之间的差异揭示出来, 阐述事物的特征或性质; 常用于说明文和议论文, 例如:

范文(Text Model):

The Constitution of the United States established a nation from the surrendered

power of the thirteen smaller nations. These smaller units retained their boundaries as states, and some of the functions of government remained in their hands, but other functions were surrendered beyond recall. Above the previously independent small nations was the new nation, the federal nation, capable, if necessary, of enforcing its larger will against the component parts. Conversely, the Charter of the United Nations required the member nations to surrender none of their functions; no new federal world nation was established and no larger will could be enforced against the component parts.

连接手段(Cohesive Devices):

difference different differ from while although on the other hand
on the contrary in contrast however instead unlike and yet but
still otherwise conversely

10.9 因果展发(Cause-Effect Development)

因果关系展发是通过分析事物的前因后果来构成语篇。具体做法有多种,如先阐述事物发生的原因,再陈述其结果;或先陈述结果,再阐述原因。因果展发常用于说明文和议论文,例如:

范文(Text Model):

In January, No.18 apartment building of the city was destroyed by a disastrous fire. After careful investigation immediately conducted by the insurance company, it was revealed that the manufacturer of the gas pipe was responsible for the damages, for they had sold defective pipes to the propane gas company. The newly installed pipe exploded when the tenant of the flat on the third floor was using the kitchen. The loud explosion shocked the entire neighborhood, and caused a fire that seriously injured the tenants of the flat.

连接手段(Cohesive Devices):

1) 在句层:

C—E

to cause

E—C

to be due to

to lead to	to be caused by
to give rise to	to result from
to result in	to be the result of
produce	to be the effect of
to be responsible for	

2) 在句群层:

E—C	
as a result	as
consequently	because
in consequence	for
therefore	since
thus	
so	

上面我们讨论了英语语篇 8 种常用的展发方式。在英语学习中,无论是听说读写等技能的提高,还是英语语感的培养;熟悉这些篇章模式,都会产生按图索骥的效果。当然在实际的英语篇章中,不可能只用一种展发方式,常常是几种展发方式交叉运用。中国学生只要按照这些最基本的展发方式去进行语言实践,就可以比较顺利地进行语言学习和习得。

附录一 分类练习

Section One

Directions: Translate each sentence into English according the sentence pattern and the verb given in the brackets.

Unit One

1. 她的头发卷得很自然。(SV; wave)
2. 他口出脏话。(SVC; pour)
3. 她的舞蹈使大家为之动容。(SVOC; dance)
4. 他打电话给我, 说他不能来。(SVOC; phone)
5. 那面红旗在飘扬。(SV; fly)
6. 冷天喝热饮料很温暖。(SV; warm)
7. 这婴儿果真是男孩。你猜对了。(SV; win)
8. 我们终于登上了山顶。(SVO; top)
9. 孩子们在玩医生和护士的游戏。(SVC; play)
10. 汽车倒出大门。(SV; back)
11. 我们明天全天拍电影。(SV; film)
12. 我们无法把车发动。(SVOC; get)
13. 请让我在拐弯的地方下车。(SVOC; drop)
14. 这消息一下传遍全国。(SVC; pass)
15. 汤姆一年卖的画值 5000 美元。(SVoO; bring)
16. 肉浸在油中。(SV; swim)
17. 春雨使夏日百花齐放。(SVO; bloom)
18. 一阵奇怪的敲门声引起我们注意。(SVO; catch)
19. 请把那本书递给我。(SVoO; hand)
20. 晚上风暴来临。(SV; break)

Unit Two

1. 他的愚行使他失去了工作。(SVoO; lose)
2. 你的话使我作出决定来帮助你。(SVOC; decide)
3. 他用肩膀挤到人群前面。(SVOC; shoulder)
4. 他和太太经常吵架。(SV; fight)
5. 这女孩头昏目眩。(SV; swim)
6. 这星期, 岳母留在我家作客。(SV; stay)
7. 她破译了我们的密码。(SVO; break)
8. 姐姐对我心怀恨意。(SVO; nurse)
9. 他在钉钉子。(SVO; drive)
10. 你不要把车停在街上。(SVO; park)
11. 这个麻烦是怎样引起的?(SV; start)
12. 你不要在危机时扰乱大局。(SVO; rock)
13. 政府提倡科学与文化。(SVO; nurse)
14. 她来信很生动地描述了她在非洲的生活。(SVO; paint)
15. 母亲没说, 但她有感受。(SV; feel)
16. 头儿逼我们在办公室干活逼得太狠。(SVOC; work)
17. 她搂着女儿在房间跳舞。(SVOC; dance)
18. 我感到很冷。(SVC; feel)
19. 这可以省得我进城一趟。(SVoO; save)
20. 泰勒这回击拳不规矩。(SV; box)

Unit Three

1. 我会把那本书取来给你。(SVoO; get)
2. 母亲今天存了1000美元。(SVO; bank)
3. 你老是打断我的话。(SVOC; cut)
4. 老板希望我们按时完工。(SVOC; wish)
5. 他一辈子务农。(SV; farm)
6. 这项法律仍然生效。(SV; stand)
7. 总统遇刺的消息震惊全国。(SVO; shock)
8. 这小孩正在长牙齿。(SVO; cut)
9. 我永远不会忘记3年前与你的那次会面。(SVO; forget)

10. 这大衣要补了。(SVO; need)
11. 在演讲中他首先指出计划生育的重要性。(SVO; note)
12. ——对不起, 我把你的茶壶打破了。
——算了吧。(SVO; forget)
13. 他无情的话语太伤我的心。(SVO; cut)
14. 我会再打电话给你。(SVO; ring)
15. 行动胜于空谈。(SV; speak)
16. 在交通高峰期车子开得很慢。(SV; move)
17. 警察指挥车辆前进。(SVOC; wave)
18. 保姆已送孩子上床睡觉。(SVOC; put)
19. 孩子们睡了。(SVC; fall)
20. 这可以省得我很多麻烦。(SVoO; save)

Unit Four

1. 请给我注满温热的洗澡水。(SVoO; run)
2. 温度降低4度。(SVC; fall)
3. 他的脏衣服使太太脸上无光。(SVOC; put)
4. 老太太看准时机横过穿马路。(SVOC; watch)
5. 那头牛出奶不旺。(SV; milk)
6. 母鸡正在孵蛋。(SV; sit)
7. 她的回答不够礼貌。(SVO; want)
8. 腿上的伤痛会毁掉他在赛跑中获胜的机会。(SVO; dish)
9. 别忘了把书带来。(SVO; forget)
10. 老人死后, 孩子们才记得他的好处。(SVO; miss)
11. 医生的忠告在我耳边响起。(SV; sound)
12. 这些股票有很高的利率。(SVO; return)
13. 这图书馆可藏书百万。(SVO; house)
14. 她把笼中的鸟放生。(SVO; free)
15. 他对这项法律提出修正案。(SVO; move)
16. 这烟斗很不好抽。(SVC; smoke)
17. 我的朋友们怂恿我从政。(SVOC; push)
18. 我们观看日落。(SVOC; watch)

19. 我军宽厚地对待战俘。(SVoO; show)
20. 他俩还不相识。(SV; meet)

Unit Five

1. 这件大衣不合你身。(SV; sit)
2. 你的汽车可装多少油?(SVO; take)
3. 战士们在挖壕自卫。(SVOC; dig)
4. 你不能骗她。(SVO; fool)
5. 雨后鱼最好钓。(SV; take)
6. 这事很重要。(SV; matter)
7. 我会使孩子们做好上学的准备。(SVOC; get)
8. 她在学舞蹈,志在成为舞蹈家。(SVO; learn)
9. 天空呈现一片红色。(SVC; show)
10. 上天保佑你们一路平安。(SVoO; send)
11. 请把那本书给我看看。(SVoO; show)
12. 电影院今晚演什么电影?(SV; show)
13. 窗子都开着。(SVOC; leave)
14. 我要把车发动起来。(SVOC; get)
15. 干完重活后他们筋疲力尽。(SV; drop)
16. 一颗子弹在我耳边咻然而过。(SV; sing)
17. 她声音很轻,有些话我没听到。(SVO; lose)
18. 她以舞蹈表示感谢。(SVO; dance)
19. 浓雾笼罩山顶。(SVO; cloud)
20. 我错过观看那位歌手在电影上的表演。(SVO; miss)

Unit Six

1. 法院把双方的辩词听完后才开庭。(SV; sit)
2. 我不喜欢别人整天整夜弹钢琴。(SVO; want)
3. 这古城的年代我说不准。(SVO; date)
4. 结果有利于我们原来的主张。(SVO; support)
5. 给那个盲人两美元吧。这对你来说算不了什么。(SVO; miss)
6. 这门炮射程有多远?(SV; carry)

7. 我感到有根针刺了我一下。(SVOC; feel)
8. 是什么使你相信我病了?(SVOC; lead)
9. 她看上去很忧郁。(SVC; seem)
10. 你能说服上司采纳你的新构想吗?(SVoO; sell)
11. 他在四分钟跑了一英里。(SVC; run)
12. 他把车卖给了弟弟。(SVoO; sell)
13. 那汉子挤到人群前面。(SVOC; push)
14. 胜利使我们情绪高昂。(SVOC; send)
15. 那顶帽子跟她的裙子不相配。(SV; match)
16. 喂, 请你切牌。(SV; cut)
17. 人群夹道成列。(SVO; line)
18. 他眼中露出很感兴趣的表情。(SVO; look)
19. 她担任主席的职务。(SVO; hold)
20. 护士把我的伤口缝合了。(SVO; close)

Unit Seven

1. 囚徒终于招供了。(SV; talk)
2. 她一下容光焕发。(SVO; light)
3. 价格上涨影响了主妇的钱包。(SVO; hit)
4. 请你说出理由来。(SVO; explain)
5. 这张桌子太占空间了。(SVO; take)
6. 这女孩一进房间就紧张起来。(SV; tell)
7. 爆炸使玻璃碎片四处飞散。(SVOC; send)
8. 他的讲演使大家保持安静。(SVOC; hold)
9. 首先要谈谈我的父亲。(SVC; come)
10. 他被判囚禁3个月。(SVoO; give)
11. 母亲念书给孩子听。(SVoO; read)
12. 这场争吵是由于误会。(SVC; rise)
13. 请把门关好。(SVOC; push)
14. 那次事故使我不得不物色新车。(SVOC; send)
15. 考试成绩吗, 我和别人同样名列第二。(SV; tie)
16. 他是个好学生, 但运动才是他真正表现出众的地方。(SV; shine)

17. 忧虑的痕迹刻画在他脸上。(SVO; line)
18. 人生多意想不到的事情。(SVO; hold)
19. 这孩子用眼巴巴地看着蛋糕。(SVO; eye)
20. 我要照几张照片。(SVOC; take)

Unit Eight

1. 诸位, 我提议为总统干杯。(SVoO; give)
2. ——你昨天为什么不上学? ——我生病了。(SVO; cut)
3. 那块石头差点击中了我的头。(SVO; miss)
4. 他会迅速把车驶进停车场。(SVO; run)
5. 面包发得不好。(SV; rise)
6. 种牛痘有反应没有?(SV; take)
7. 他死后遗下妻子和两个儿子。(SVO; leave)
8. 她又抢跑。(SVO; jump)
9. 任何事都不能开脱他虐待儿童的罪行。(SVO; excuse)
10. 我想要杯茶。(SVO; mind)
11. 别干傻事。免得别人说闲话。(SV; talk)
12. 这不受欢迎的税不久就取消了。(SVO; lift)
13. 她照顾姐姐的小孩。(SVO; keep)
14. 写作训练人的思维。(SVO; exercise)
15. 再等半个钟头你介意吗?(SVO; mind)
16. 我们现在退庭用膳。(SV; rise)
17. 他裁定囚犯有罪。(SOVC; return)
18. 那条狗夹着尾巴。(SVOC; hold)
19. 江水深及到我的脖子。(SVC; come)
20. 他儿子给他惹来很多麻烦(SVoO; give)

Unit Nine

1. 店铺何时打烊?(SV; close)
2. 别等我回家才开饭。我要晚些回来。(SVO; wait)
3. 那匹马越过小溪。(SVO; jump)
4. 你可随时打电话跟他联络。(SVO; reach)

5. 护士小姐, 请给这位先生量量体温。(SVO; take)
6. 电话铃响了。(SV; ring)
7. 他把她逼疯了。(SVOC; drive)
8. 我听到他如此说。(SVOC; hear)
9. 我们的赛艇不久落在别的赛艇之后。(SVC; drop)
10. 女儿给自己定做了一件新裙子。(SVoO; order)
11. 这辆车行驶得很平稳。(SV; ride)
12. 你能开车送我出车站吗?(SVOC; drive)
13. 我不许星期天来我家跳舞。(SVOC; have)
14. 他们用小刀割断绳索释放自己。(SVOC; cut)
15. 医生嘱咐他卧床休息一周。(SVoO; order)
16. 烟囱不通气。(SV; draw)
17. 昨晚我做了个怪梦。(SVO; visit)
18. 我们工作中遇到一个大难题。(SVO; hit)
19. 这件新裙子不合身。你最好换一件。(SVO; change)
20. 这个故事引人发笑。(SVO; raise)

Unit Ten

1. 这种音乐过时了。(SV; date)
2. 他生活很苦。(SVO; lead)
3. 母亲只遵守重要的宗教节日。(SVO; keep)
4. 这个计划还未获批准。(SVO; clear)
5. 记者们没有从他那里套出任何消息。(SVO; milk)
6. 他们的讥笑声十分刺耳。(SV; ring)
7. 母亲唱歌使婴儿入睡。(SVOC; sing)
8. 这手杖可以助他步行。(SVOC; help)
9. 让争论到此为止。(SVO; rest)
10. 请把茶壶递给我。(SVoO; reach)
11. 搬动家具常使我腰酸背痛。(SVoO; give)
12. 酸腐蚀了金属。(SVC; eat)
13. 他那样说我也没法。(SVOC; help)
14. 他的一言一行表明他是个军人。(SVOC; stamp)

15. 大雨后江水涨了。(SV; rise)
16. 在阳光下波浪起伏不定。(SV; dance)
17. 房子得油漆了。(SVO; want)
18. 他插队。(SVO; jump)
19. 那匹马轻易地越过每道篱笆。(SVI; clear)
20. 我们在城里买下一套公寓。(SVO; take)

Unit Eleven

1. 主席道出了与会者的心声。(SVO; voice)
2. 这条小路在何处与大路相交?(SVO; join)
3. 在这里可以兑换英币吗?(SVO; change)
4. 他长时间不在,引起大家对他的安全担心。(SVO; raise)
5. 春天不久会再来。(SV; return)
6. 他的才能使他登上他行业的最高地位。(SVOC; carry)
7. 那青年留长发。(SVOC; grow)
8. 老太太今天着红装。(SVC; dress)
9. 他对她无恶意。(SVoO; mean)
10. 你在胡思乱想。(SV; dream)
11. 这门容易开。(SV; pull)
12. ——我不知道那有多少钱。——就算 50 美元吧。(SVOC; call)
13. 火车已开出车站。(SVC; pull)
14. 温度计显示 33 度。(SVC; read)
15. 请把这杯茶倒满。(SVoO; fill)
16. 这怎么能行呢?(SV; do)
17. 他们报道东方出了颗新星。(SVO; report)
18. 请随便吃吧。(SVO; help)
19. 我听不清你说的话。(SVO; catch)
20. 很多重病是由昆虫传染的。(SVO; carry)

Unit Twelve

1. 两个队以 5 比 5 打成平局。(SV; draw)
2. 让上帝使他灵魂安宁。(SVO; rest)

3. 车撞到了墙上。(SVO; hit)
4. 他们没有赶上早班车。(SVO; catch)
5. 战后他们建立了一座纪念碑。(SVO; raise)
6. 这两条小径在哪里交叉?(SV; cross)
7. 我看英语不难学。(SVOC; call)
8. 这柜门我拉不开。(SVOC; pull)
9. 群山环抱幽谷。(SVC; sweep)
10. 请给拿条干净的手帕来。(SVoO; fetch)
11. 我向你出价 100 美元。(SVoO; make)
12. 一阵恐惧袭上心头。(SVC; sweep)
13. 她把吵吵嚷嚷的孩子留给我们看管。(SVOC; plant)
14. 我们给孩子取名叫汤姆。(SVOC; call)
15. 你努力工作就会成功。(SV; come)
16. 他俩约会好几个月了。(SV; date)
17. 我要记得发出这封信。(SVO; remember)
18. 他们两只手握在一起。(SVO; join)
19. 士兵攻陷这座城市。(SVO; storm)
20. 我们必须立刻用无线电发出这个消息。(SVO; radio)

Unit Thirteen

1. 他的秘密至死不为人知。(SV; die)
2. 他在圣诞节总是给我送来礼物。(SVO; remember)
3. 他 18 岁就参了军。(SVO; join)
4. 医生仔细察看了伤口的形状。(SVO; study)
5. 云覆盖着群山。(SVO; cap)
6. 看到我, 她脸红了。(SV; color)
7. 文件已化为灰烬。(SVOC; burn)
8. 这国家成了一堆废墟。(SVOC; lay)
9. 我跑时头发就松了。(SVC; work)
10. 他给自己冲了杯咖啡。(SVoO; make)
11. 她埋头苦干, 终于在校队为自己争得一席之地。(SVoO; win)
12. 如果你笑她, 她会翻脸的。(SVC; turn)

13. 大家笑得她跑出了房间。(SVOC; laugh)
14. 土豆烧焦了, 我们不能吃。(SVC; burn)
15. 天下着倾盆大雨。(SV; pour)
16. 这钟走慢了。(SV; lose)
17. 你向她借钱试试看。(SVO; try)
18. 女主人将啤酒冰藏。(SVO; ice)
19. 士兵每周接受一次检阅。(SVO; stand)
20. 我对他的诚实绝对不怀疑。(SVO; question)

Unit Fourteen

1. 这箱盖掀不开。(SV; lift)
2. 风吹皱了湖面。(SVO; trouble)
3. 法官审讯了此案。(SVO; hear)
4. 他要娶我, 但我一见他就受不了。(SVO; stand)
5. 她在昨天的宴会上提出一项很好的建议。(SVO; drop)
6. 这两个球撞在一起。(SV; kiss)
7. 我在车与车之间的狭窄空间慢慢移动。(SVOC; inch)
8. 她把他打得失去知觉。(SVOC; knock)
9. 约翰病了。(SVC; take)
10. 你该把球投给我。(SVoO; throw)
11. 四条江都流入这个大湖。(SV; empty)
12. 警官试试所有门窗, 看是否已关好。(SVO; try)
13. 衣服已烫好了。(SVO; iron)
14. 抓贼啊! 抓贼!(SVO; stop)
15. ——你的马伤了脚?
——是的, 所以我就不让它参加比赛了。(SVO; race)
16. 指东指西是无礼的。(SV; point)
17. 他把椅子踢开。(SVOC; kick)
18. 那会使他入狱。(SVOC; land)
19. 他干起犯法的勾当来。(SVC; turn)
20. 我们挥手向父母告别。(SVoO, wave)

Unit Fifteen

1. 消息传得很快。(SVC; travel)
2. 她那出乎我意料的话吓得我目瞪口呆。(SVOC; knock)
3. 大衣使她温暖。(SVOC; keep)
4. 春天爬上了柳梢。(SV; play)
5. 现在汤姆一路领先。(SV; lead)
6. 这律师往往问莫名其妙的问题使证人上当出错。(SVO; trip)
7. 她懂一点英语, 但不太懂科学。(SVO; have)
8. 那艘军舰挂着国旗。(SVO; fly)
9. 他放低了声音。(SVO; drop)
10. 他教我们英语。(SVoO; teach)
11. 这场戏很叫座。(SVC; draw)
12. 她绝不让自己杀一鸟一兽。(SVOC; bring)
13. 他从密密的森林里打开一条出路。(SVOC; beat)
14. 她开枪时, 枪猛然后坐。(SV; kick)
15. 火车星期天不开。(SV; run)
16. 女主人摆好刀叉准备吃饭。(SVO; lay)
17. 我只许乖孩子来我家。(SVO; have)
18. 老板经常坐英航的飞机。(SVO; fly)
19. 他逼工人干活。(SVO; drive)
20. 她狠狠地瞪了我一眼。(SVoO; throw)

Unit Sixteen

1. 那小孩在流鼻涕。(SV; run)
2. 母亲葬礼那天, 我父亲真正落泪了。(SVO; cry)
3. 10 美元够买那件裙子吗? (SVO; cover)
4. 他能驾驶飞机。(SVO; fly)
5. 乔治, 你给孩子穿衣服吧。(SVO; dress)
6. 鱼不能放久了。(SV; keep)
7. ——你遇见她了? ——是的, 可是她硬是假装不认识我。(SVOC; cut)
8. 那条狗把犯人咬死。(SVOC; bite)
9. 夜幕低垂了。(SVC; draw)

10. 老太太给我切了块儿蛋糕。(SVoO; cut)
11. 那一年物价突然上涨。(SV; jump)
12. 他把一大笔钱(从银行)提出。(SVOC; draw)
13. 那位候选人的支持者混在人群中间。(SVOC; plant)
14. 产后, 母子平安。(SVC; do)
15. 你的罪行会使你丧命。(SVoO; cost)
16. 机器在运转。(SV; run)
17. 她这回领衔主演。(SVO; top)
18. 记者们采访这次政治审判。(SVO; cover)
19. 汤姆被打倒在地, (SVO; floor)
20. 星期三他们在装饰圣诞树。(SVO; dress)

Unit Seventeen

1. 这辆旧车发动机发出很多故障声。(SV; knock)
2. ——他真的娶了那女孩?
——娶了。他不顾父亲不高兴。(SVO; brave)
3. 他年纪大了, 记忆不清。(SVO; cloud)
4. 她以微笑表示问候。(SVO; smile)
5. 该党正准备在下次选举中派三名候选人参加竞选。(SVO; run)
6. 我烫衣烫了一整天。(SV; iron)
7. 他天生是要当伟人的。(SVOC; mean)
8. 我们急忙把病妇送进医院。(SVOC; race)
9. 我们的假期有 10 天。(SVC; last)
10. 这不会对你有坏处。(SVoO; do)
11. 对于这件事, 你不要感情用事。(SVO; rule)
12. 这床可以睡 3 人。(SVO; sleep)
13. 那钟报时准确。(SVO; give)
14. 他们猎获一只兔子。(SVO; bag)
15. 进来前请先敲门。(SV; knock)
16. 今天蚊子真咬人。(SV; bite)
17. 把窗户打开行吗? (SVOC; mind)
18. 有钱的叔叔频频送礼物给这孩子。(SVOC; rain)

19. 由你决定吧。(SVC; lie)
20. 他给我吹制一个漂亮的玻璃杯。(SVoO; blow)

Unit Eighteen

1. 我要请你吃顿饭。(SVoO; stand)
2. 饭菜都凉了。(SVC; get)
3. 请带那位先生进来。(SVOC; show)
4. 我感到要说话才行。(SVOC; move)
5. 空气污染已令人感到吃不消了。(SV; bite)
6. 鸟儿停在树枝上。(SV; land)
7. 这个队员已被警告两次。(SVO; book)
8. 简老是学我穿衣服。(SVO; copy)
9. 这辆车很好开。(SVC; drive)
10. 你的表几点了?(SVO; say)
11. 我们安全登陆。(SV; land)
12. 风吹起她的头发。(SVO; blow)
13. 我的集邮还差一张就成套了。(SVO; complete)
14. 我真被他胡编的谎言所蒙蔽。(SVO; snow)
15. 谁治理这个国家?(SVO; run)
16. 今天鱼不上钩。(SV; bite)
17. 他们已把会谈从原则的考虑改变到实际的想法。(SVOC; move)
18. 他劝我别打那个主意。(SVOC; reason)
19. 炎热的天气一直持续到9月。(SVC; last)
20. 她在那张照片上的样子不像她本人。(SVoO; do)

Unit Nineteen

1. 请你决定吧。(SV; choose)
2. 你先把鸡内脏清除掉。(SVO; draw)
3. 温度计显示出90度的温度。(SVO; record)
4. 他打算去天津。(SVO; plan)
5. 出门前你要把鞋子擦亮。(SVO; shine)
6. 我们的母牛又怀胎了。(SV; carry)

7. 我很希望你再来。(SVOC; love)
8. 经验把他磨成一个堂堂男子汉。(SVOC; make)
9. 你从这儿到纽约需要4小时。(SVoO; take)
10. 他的抱怨无人理睬。(SVO; go)
11. 我把面包递给他。(SVoO; pass)
12. 那声音渐渐大起来。(SVC; grow)
13. 她把那块料子做成一件裙子。(SVOC; make)
14. 这项新制度使大家陷于混乱。(SVOC; throw)
15. 这项法律以310票对306票获得通过。(SV; carry)
16. 摩托车发动机打不着火。(SV; catch)
17. 小偷被判刑3年。(SVO; sentence)
18. 你能安顿这两个无家可归的孩子吗?(SVO; place)
19. 这湖能容纳三江之水。(SVO; receive)
20. 他在刷牙。(SVO; do)

Unit Twenty

1. 那只老母鸡不下蛋。(SV; lay)
2. 你快去订机票。(SVO; book)
3. 那只猫会咬人,如果把它逼急了。(SVO; corner)
4. 房子面向公园。(SVO; face)
5. 坏消息使报纸销路大。(SVO; sell)
6. ——她对你的计划感兴趣吗? ——不,她不感兴趣。(SV; bite)
7. 这个故事催人泪下。(SVOC; move)
8. 把头靠在墙上!(SVOC; rest)
9. 那扇门突然开了。(SVC; fly)
10. 请给我选本小说。(SVoO; choose)
11. 请再给他端杯茶来。(SVoO; take)
12. 哪条路通向车站?(SVC; go)
13. 她在这张照片上显得很年轻。(SVOC; make)
14. 她的叫喊声引来了邻居。(SVOC; bring)
15. 你发胖了。你要多运动。(SV; exercise)
16. 我和我女朋友同一天寄信,所以两封信彼此错过了。(SV; cross)

17. 他终于把孩子制服了。(SVO; break)
18. 他父母不纠正他的坏习惯。(SVO; correct)
19. 他相信她说话的真实性。(SVO; feel)
20. 这东西太贵了。你上当了。(SVO; cheat)

Unit Twenty-one

1. 我们什么时候吃饭?(SV; eat)
2. 他养活一家四口。(SVO; keep)
3. 暴风雨横扫全国。(SVO; sweep)
4. 要讨好她很难。(SVO; please)
5. 那只船已进水。(SVO; ship)
6. 到夜晚,这座城市沦陷了。(SV; fall)
7. 我倒要提醒你放规矩点。(SVOC; trouble)
8. 他们给婴儿取名叫汤姆。(SVOC; name)
9. 窗帘挂得很妥当。(SVC; hang)
10. 有人用铅制硬币骗我。(SVoO; pass)
11. 这把刀不好使。(SV; cut)
12. 他会做饭吗?(SVO; do)
13. 我可以看出你的意思。(SVO; read)
14. 这部影片吸引很多观众。(SVO; fetch)
15. 啊,你的演奏令人陶醉。(SVO; send)
16. 到秋天树叶变色。(SV; color)
17. 我希望他能再来。(SVOC; like)
18. 国王娶她为王后。(SVOC; make)
19. 难道应让杀人犯逍遥法外吗?(SVC; go)
20. 她体态优雅地向大家鞠躬。(SVoO; sweep)

Unit Twenty-two

1. 请给我们演奏一些愉快的乐曲。(SVoO; play)
2. 他的话似乎是真的。(SVC; ring)
3. 他命令士兵开火。(SVOC; order)
4. 老板待他不好。(SVOC; use)

5. 那家商店 10 点开门。(SV; open)
6. 那本书搞到哪里去了?(SV; hide)
7. 我的脚痛得要命。(SVO; kill)
8. 这门课对我来说毫不困难。(SVO; present)
9. 我要对你说句心里话。(SVO; speak)
10. 我们好不容易攀到山顶。(SVO; win)
11. 这里宜种桔子。(SV; grow)
12. 他踢进一球。(SVO; kick)
13. 容我介绍这位新歌手。(SVO; present)
14. 这次交通事故强调开车要小心。(SVO; point)
15. 她等着看我要干什么。(SVO; watch)
16. 我母亲当了一辈子护士。(SV; nurse)
17. “小孩”是指 14 岁以下的人。(SVOC; understand)
18. 你看到她离开房间吗?(SVOC; notice)
19. 这孩子频频收到礼物。(SVC; rain)
20. 他对她玩弄了卑鄙的诡计。(SVoO; play)

Unit Twenty-three

1. 请给我放你最喜欢的唱片。(SVoO; play)
2. 这片森林方圆好几公里。(SVC; reach)
3. 我需要把大衣补一下。(SVC; need)
4. 父亲知道了会把我赶出家门。(SVOC; turn)
5. 他们下周会搬家。(SV; move)
6. 这间房子很快就腾空了。(SV; empty)
7. 那家商店什么都经营。(SVO; keep)
8. 老人眺望远方。(SVO; sweep)
9. 他窃取了一半利息。(SVO; pocket)
10. 警方因人命案在通缉他。(SVO; want)
11. 我会打电话把这消息告诉你。(SVoO; phone)
12. 她泪如雨注。(SVC; rain)
13. 总统指派他为国务卿。(SVOC; name)
14. 火车按时间表在 6 点到达。(SVOC; time)

15. 听到这消息她脸色沉下来。(SV; fall)
16. 暴风雨后, 天气晴朗。(SV; clear)
17. 昨晚我做了个美梦。(SVO; dream)
18. 他已还清债务。(SVO; clear)
19. 他邪恶的话在我们心中播下憎恨的种子。(SVO; plant)
20. 我们把产品运到英国。(SVO; ship)

Unit Twenty-four

1. 他吻别了孩子和太太。(SVoO; kiss)
2. 他画画的天才很早就展露了。(SVC; flower)
3. 我们必须妥善处理我们的事情。(SVOC; order)
4. 我们发现她是个好厨师。(SVOC; discover)
5. 作为优秀的游泳选手, 她常参加比赛。(SV; race)
6. 我迟到了; 我必须赶快走。(SV; fly)
7. 风轻拂着她的头发。(SVO; kiss)
8. 她撅起嘴, 表示不快。(SVO; purse)
9. 暴风雨不久就平息了。(SVO; spend)
10. 一位老朋友为他们主持婚礼。(SVO; marry)
11. 好天气会不会持续下去?(SV; hold)
12. 那个错误毁掉了他的机会。(SVO; kill)
13. 他心里很烦, 但却露出平和的微笑。(SVO; present)
14. 他气愤地顿足。(SVO; stamp)
15. 她嫁给了有钱人。(SVO; marry)
16. 收音机响声太大。(SV; play)
17. 海浪把他卷走。(SVOC; wash)
18. 他命令离开教室。(SVOC; order)
19. 这算是我们本月第三次见面。(SVC; make)
20. 请倒给我一杯咖啡。(SVoO; pure)

Unit Twenty-five

1. 八减二余六。(SVoO; leave)
2. 他死而无憾。(SVC; die)

3. 他在她背上插了一刀。(SVOC; plant)
4. 那孤独的老人借酒消愁。(SVOC; drink)
5. 农民让地休耕一年。(SV; rest)
6. 那钟坏了。(SV; go)
7. 他终于认输了。(SVO; kiss)
8. 这个小镇占地 10 平方公里。(SVO; cover)
9. 请按这个药方配药。(SVO; fill)
10. 这个英语词是什么意思?(SVO; mean)
11. 这台机器靠电力运转。(SV; run)
12. 雨使飞扬的尘土沉落下来。(SVO; lay)
13. 他一天能走 50 公里。(SVO; cover)
14. 这条河捕鱼过度。(SVO; fish)
15. 这可满足你的希望了吧。(SVO; meet)
16. 我以为你是在开玩笑。(SV; joke)
17. 我用激将法, 要他跳下去。(SVOC; dare)
18. 他被定为第一名。(SVOC; place)
19. 她死时很富有。(SVC; die)
20. 来访者给你留下一封信。(SVoO; leave).

Unit Twenty-six

1. 在英语方面你比不上他。(SVO; match)
2. 笑声弥漫整个房间。(SVO; fill)
3. 坐飞机去太花钱。(SVO; cost)
4. 月光轻拂大海。(SVO; kiss)
5. 他一直在鬼混。(SV; fool)
6. 琼斯夫人星期一接见客人。(SV; receive)
7. 班长, 叫士兵向右排成单行。(SVOC; dress)
8. 他把门漆成蓝色。(SVOC; paint)
9. 这栋房子可卖 3 万美元。(SVC; fetch)
10. 请给我保管这东西。(SVO; keep)
11. 食物够他们吃一个月。(SVoO; last)
12. 他一死, 田产传给了儿子。(SVC; pass)

13. 你会把这个歌手列为哪个等级? (SVOC; place)
14. 他喝得不省人事。(SVOC; drink)
15. 机器在录音。(SV; record)
16. 票的销路不佳。(SV; sell)
17. 她以笑表示她的轻蔑。(SVO; laugh)
18. 我们打败了另一个队。(SVO; hammer)
19. 他们在救火。(SVO; fight)
20. 这个学生已掌握了两门外语。(SVO; master)

Unit Twenty-seven

1. 这消息传开了。(SV; break)
2. 我父亲身体一向健康。(SVO; enjoy)
3. 那药真令人浑身发热。(SV; burn)
4. 你们都要受罚; 我不放过任何人。(SVO; except)
5. 你要早点订票。(SV; book)
6. 他在信的结尾向全家人祝福。(SVO; end)
7. 他常常穿得暖暖和和的。(SVC; keep)
8. 我觉得她很聪明。(SVOC; think)
9. 她的头发一直在飘动。(SV; blow)
10. 总统宣布举行选举。(SVO; call)
11. 我的案子已有充分的说明。(SV; rest)
12. ——你们就住在这镇上吗?
——不, 我们只是在此游览而已。(SV; visit)
13. 他自认为是个大诗人。(SVOC; think)
14. 我不相信那种胡言乱语。(SVO; buy)
15. 这两家已经联姻。(SVC; join)
16. 他的剧本在纽约连续上演。(SV; run)
17. 她的病情恶化。(SV; turn)
18. 他才气过人, 晋升到最高职位。(SVOC; take)
19. 母亲教导孩子不要打架。(SVOC; teach)
20. 这本书在我心目中价值很高。(SVC; stand)

Unit Twenty-Eight

1. 我们在纽约时总住这家饭店。(SV; visit)
2. 第一行诗是怎样说的?(SV; run)
3. 会议由她主持。(SVC; chair)
4. 请坐在原位不动。(SVC; stay)
5. 你能分得出琼恩和她的孪生妹妹吗?(SVOC; tell)
6. 天气热, 他翻来覆去睡不着。(SV; turn)
7. 这兄弟俩永远不会和好相处。(SV; agree)
8. 一听到爆炸声我就报警了。(SV; report)
9. ——他为什么还在滔滔不绝?
——她是在拖时间。(SVO; buy)
10. 我的裙子卡在门上了。(SVC; catch)
11. 他用灯照路, 送老人上楼。(SVOC; light)
12. 老人逐一回想最近一连串的事件。(SV; travel)
13. 草在风中起伏波动。(SV; wave)
14. 你回他的信没有?(SV; reply)
15. 你使我很为难。(SVOC; place)
16. 凶犯是被他女朋友告发的。(SVO; shop)
17. 设线段 AB 跟 CD 等长。(SVOC; let)
18. 杰克终于逃脱了。(SVC; break)
19. 这句话听起来对吗?(SVC; sound)
20. 在这里呆了几年, 我感到身得其所。(SV; belong)

Unit Twenty-nine

1. 人人都要遵守法律。(SVO; keep)
2. 妻子很晚回家让他放心不下。(SVO; worry).
3. 你说他工作永远做不好, 实在冤枉了他。(SVO; wrong)
4. 她每天给他写信。(SVoO; write)
5. 这位朋友写信要我来。(SVO; write)
6. 孩子们在放风筝。(SVO; fly)
7. 食物在锅里烧成硬块了。(SV; cake)
8. 大海在吸引他。(SVO; call)

9. 她的头发长到腿部。(SVC; come)
10. 这个问题可以直接送给主席斟酌吗?(SVC; go)
11. 就一般而言,她是个好厨师。(SV; go)
12. 我用车送你回家好吗?(SVOC; run)
13. 我昨天已接到这个消息。(SVO; reach)
14. 父亲伸手把那本书取下来给我。(SVoO; reach)
15. 蒸气使窗户变得模模糊糊。(SVO; cloud)
16. 我喜欢读小说。(SVO; enjoy)
17. 她丈夫今天替她上课。(SVO; take)
18. 约翰病了。(SVOC; take)
19. 假日过得真快啊!(SV; race)
20. 上周,食品价格上涨。(SV; jump)

Unit Thirty

- 1 这种罪行必然导致严惩。(SVC; carry)
2. 你要站稳。(SVC; stand)
3. 他以谎言摆脱麻烦。(SVOC; lie)
4. 女孩把他的微笑当作同意的表示。(SVOC; take)
5. 这双鞋快坏了。(SV; go)
6. 他说的话我就是不相信。(SV; wash)
7. 我觉得口里仍有洋葱味。(SV; repeat)
8. 蛋糕上敷了一层奶油。(SVO; top)
9. 我的报纸飞得到处都是。(SVC; blow)
10. 你的钱存在哪家银行?(SV; bank)
11. 她让孩子在街上玩。(SVOC; let)
12. 我难以想象自己当了父亲。(SVOC; picture)
13. 三除以二,除不尽。(SV; go)
14. 海水腐蚀了岩石。(SVOC; eat)
15. 闪电划过天空。(SVC; play)
16. 你的想法行不通。(SV; work)
17. 你的茶泡好了;别让它凉了。(SV; wait)
18. 枯叶到处飞扬。(SVC; fly)

19. 那事故只能怪你自己。(SVO; think)
20. 两个拳击手互相猛撞对方。(SVOC; throw)

Section Two

Direction: Each of the following sentences is incomplete and is followed by four choices. Choose the one that best completes the sentence.

Unit One

1. He assured me _____ his ability to do this job.
A. to B. of C. with D. about
2. John Smith has informed me _____ the meeting tomorrow.
A. to B. for C. of D. about
3. Almost everyone fails _____ on the first day.
A. is passing his driver's test B. to pass his driver's test
C. to have passed his driver's test D. passing his driver's test
4. It was lucky that the car stopped _____ the dog.
A. avoided B. to avoid C. for to avoid D. avoiding
5. Cafes in Greece _____ "Taverns".
A. gave called B. are called C. called D. are calling
6. Mrs. Turner isn't here. She _____ her husband at the entrance.
A. is waiting B. is waiting for C. waits for D. to wait
7. She could sense _____ her husband was thinking.
A. that B. what C. thus D. this
8. Which horse are you tipping _____ the race?
A. to win B. winning C. of winning D. win
9. The short man edged his way _____ to the front of the crowd.

- A. for B. over C. through D. across
10. I regret _____ him a thief, but I regret even more his stealing my watch.
A. to call B. having called C. to have called D. call
11. It's necessary that the nurse _____ the child to go to the hospital.
A. prepares B. prepare C. must prepare D. can prepare
12. The box _____ 10 meters in length, 5 meters in width and 4 meters in height.
A. lasts B. covers C. weighs D. measures
13. Would you please _____ in the yard ?
A. don't park the car B. not park the car C. park the car not D. car not park
14. On the New Year's Eve, the mayor made _____ appearance in the town hall.
A. 0 B. an C. a D. his
15. The bus was so full that I was _____ in and couldn't move.
A. jammed B. jamming C. to jam D. to be jammed
16. A friend _____ me a tent and some equipment.
A. borrowed B. hired C. lent D. let
17. My mother always boils the eggs _____. I don't like them.
A. to be hard B. hard C. being hard D. hardy
18. The gift you gave me at Christmas allowed me _____ a new car.
A. buying B. to buy C. of buying D. for buying
19. You said you had mastered the English sentence patterns. I think you should drill _____ more.
A. for them B. at them C. them D. with them
20. I think the clock needs _____.
A. to repair B. repairing C. for repair D. of repairing

Unit Two

1. The cruel master grudged _____ the food I ate.

- A. of me B. for me C. me D. about me
2. We anticipate _____ a lot of opposition to our new plan.
A. to meet B. being met C. meeting D. to be met
3. I really envy you _____ beautiful garden.
A. your B. for you C. you've D. having
4. Mary's father approved of _____ in the United States for another year in order to work hard toward her M. A .
A. her to stay B. her staying C. she staying D. she to stay
5. I don't like _____ this afternoon; it's too cool.
A. swimming B. to swim C. of swimming D. swim
6. A policeman has _____ to control the traffic.
A. been calling B. called himself C. call D. been called
7. If you _____ in taking this attitude, we'll have to ask you to leave.
A. persist B. insist C. resist D. pursue
8. These doors are made in pieces that _____ back against the wall.
A. are folding B. are folded C. be folded D. fold
9. A swim in the lake really touches _____ on a hot day like today.
A. to the spot B. the spot C. off the spot D. on the spot
10. The police had to employ force _____ the crowd.
A. breaking B. breaking up C. to break D. to break up
11. We regret _____ you that you are to be dismissed next week.
A. telling B. for telling C. to tell D. in telling
12. It's vital that a doctor _____ at once.
A. is sent to B. need to be sent C. be sent to D. sending to
13. Once or twice a week the family go _____.
A. camping B. for camp C. to camp D. for a camping

14. —Was the rally successful ?
—No, because the number of _____ was smaller than we had expected.
A. people who attend B. attended people
C. people attending D. attendance people
15. When he was young he went to Chicago to _____ money.
A. make B. do C. amass D. gain
16. The coat is made of good material. It will _____ ten years.
A. cost B. take C. keep D. last
17. Nancy asked if she could _____ some money for bus fare to get home.
A. lend B. loan C. borrow D. gain
18. Before you go to bed you should brush your teeth _____.
A. to be clean B. being clean C. clean D. cleanly
19. We failed in our attempt _____ the mountain because of the storm.
A. of climbing B. in our climbing C. to climb D. climbing
20. When I woke up next morning I was _____ bird songs.
A. saluted by B. greeted with C. greeted by D. saluted with

Unit Three

1. The visitor left _____ a letter.
A. for you B. with you C. on you D. you
2. If he had not been a child he would not have avoided _____.
A. be punishing B. to be punished C. to punish D. punishing
3. When she heard my jokes she could not resist _____.
A. laughing B. to laughing C. being laughing D. to laugh
4. In many years, riding a bike is similar to _____.
A. the driving of a car B. when you drive a car
C. driving a car D. when driving a car

5. —My brother says he won't help us.
—Oh, perhaps I can persuade him _____.
A. to help B. for helping B. helping D. that he helps
6. Because of the complexity of the modern machine, most offices require secretaries _____.
A. to have specific training B. specified in training
C. to train specifically D. training specified.
7. Last night, in a radio address, the President urged us _____ to the Red Cross.
A. that we subscribe B. subscribe
C. subscribing D. to subscribe
8. The task is urgent. That determines you _____ at once.
A. to go B. going C. of your going D. go
9. The teacher encourages his students _____ hard.
A. to study B. studying C. study D. in studying
10. My wife reminded me _____ I hadn't written to my mother.
A. what B. how C. this D. that
11. When a mere boy, he aimed _____ a writer.
A. to be B. being C. at D. to
12. The journey by train will _____ you two hours.
A. be taking B. take C. cost D. be costing
13. —Mr. Wilson is expected back at noon.
—Would you have him _____ then, please?
A. calling me B. call me C. to calling me D. called me
14. If you want to succeed you should begin to do _____ now.
A. spadework B. the spadework
C. work of spade D. the work of spade
15. Although she is fifty years old but she has _____ well.

- A. lasted B. endured C. kept D. worn
16. I _____ to inform you that there's nothing we can do to help you.
A. sorry B. displease C. resent D regret
17. The new shirt is nice, but it _____ easily.
A. isn't buttoned B. hasn't buttoned C. hasn't button D. doesn't button
18. I hate conversation where people try to score _____ each other.
A. to B. of C. off D. on
19. When you meet the boss, you must _____ your tongue carefully.
A. defend B. protect C. watch D. guard
20. I am looking forward to _____ her.
A. meet B. be met with C. be meeting with D. meeting

Unit Four

1. He is a new-comer. You should show him _____.
A. how to do it B. how to do C. how doing it D. the way to do
2. How can you defend _____ someone like that ?
A. to kill B. killing C. to killing D. kill
3. —Why are you walking so slowly ?
—My shoes _____.
A. feel hurt B. hurt C. damage D. wound
4. I wish that you _____ such a headache because I'm sure that you would have enjoyed the concert.
A. hadn't B. didn't have C. hadn't had D. hadn't have
5. —Why were you late ?
— had a hard time _____ up this morning.
A. to get B. get C. got D. getting
6. The students in the dorms were forbidden, unless they had special passes, _____

- after 11:00 p.m.
A. staying out B. stay out C. form staying out D. to stay out
7. Many parents allow their children _____ own decisions.
A. making their B. making the C. to make their D. to make the
8. We can never imagine George _____ the dinner.
A. cooking B. to cook C. in cooking D. for cooking
9. The policeman directed the crowd _____.
A. to move B. moving C. in moving D. to move for
10. The little boy narrowly escaped _____.
A. drowning B. being drowned C. to be drowned D. to drown
11. The sight of the clock reminded me _____ at once.
A. to leave B. leaves C. for leaving D. leave
12. Mr. Smith succeeded Mrs. Jones _____ our English teacher.
A. to be B. being C. as D. for
13. Never mind. Their food will _____ them two months.
A. cost B. take C. last D. keep
14. She _____ down and soon fell asleep.
A. lied B. lay C. laid D. lain
15. He pretended to be a scholar but _____ himself as he made a speech.
A. revealed B. discovered C. betrayed D. found
16. It is a very cold today. The temperature _____ 10 degrees.
A. falls B. drips C. lowers D. reduces
17. I don't think I could _____ another night without sleep.
A. stand B. support C. put up D. carry
18. I don't care _____ football; I'd rather go for a walk.
A. to play B. play C. for to play D. of playing

19. He was left by his family to _____ or swim by himself.
 A. fall B. drown C. drop D. sink
20. The gardener has served _____ the school for 30 years.
 A. for B. to C. Φ D. with

Unit Five

1. Did you notice me _____ the room ?
 A. to leave B. leave C. for leaving D. of leaving
2. In the battle the general narrowly escaped _____.
 A. killing B. to be killed C. being killed D. to kill
3. I think a hot drink _____ on such a cold day.
 A. gets warm B. warming C. be warm D. warms
4. I am afraid of the tent _____ down during the night.
 A. fell B. fall C. to fall D. falling
5. He never _____ the same.
 A. attempts to B. is become C. sounds D. voices
6. John, my friend rents a new apartment. I have to help him _____.
 A. move B. move it C. moving D. move to it
7. It's suddenly cloudy; we had better _____ the clubhouse.
 A. to take shelter B. to take refuge in
 C. take shelter in D. take refuge from
8. Can't we _____ our disagreements and work together ?
 A. sink down B. sink away C. sink D. sink off
9. Be _____ your feelings, and tell her the truth before it's too late.
 A. guided by B. led by C. guided with D. lead with
10. If someone swallows poison, a doctor can sometimes pump it _____ the stomach.

- A. into B. from C. out of D. beside
11. He will agree to do what you require _____.
A. in him B. of him C. for him D. from him
12. She was generous to him but she suffered _____ it when he ran away with all her money.
A. from B. to C. under D. for
13. ——The car won't start.
——That _____ it; we can't go out tonight.
A. settles on B. settles down C. is settling D. settles
14. One of the workers has hung the curtain that had been _____ on the floor.
A. lied B. lain C. lying D. laying
15. Don't hug _____. You have a long way to go for your success.
A. you B. your back C. your neck D. yourself.
16. His father once tried to _____ a sailor of him.
A. do B. make C. become D. turn
17. He sent _____.
A. some cards his friends B. to his friends some cards
C. his friend some cards D. his friend to some cards
18. I would feel _____ down with a wife, a house and children.
A. to be chained B. chained C. being chained D. chaining
19. The manager said he considered me _____ too lazy to be a good worker.
A. seeming B. being C. seem D. to be
20. All the judges scored _____ 9.88.
A. on him B. in him C. at him D. him

Unit Six

1. The sight of the boy reminds me _____ the earthquake ten years ago.

- A. about B. of C. on D. to
2. We decided to delay _____ our holiday until next month.
A. going for B. to go on C. going on D. to go for
3. You shouldn't buy so much fish. I can't _____, you know.
A. remain B. protect C. keep D. preserve
4. I wonder _____.
A. how much cost these shoes B. how much do these shoes cost
C. how much these shoes cost D. how much are these shoes cost
5. I am going to the passport office _____.
A. to stamp my passport B. for stamping
C. to have stamped my passport D. to have my passport stamped
6. Don't make him _____ it if he doesn't want to.
A. do B. to do C. doing D. that he does
7. Mr. Smith doesn't want _____ what to buy.
A. his wife tell him B. for his wife to tell him
C. his wife to tell him D. that his wife tells him
8. I drove so fast that the policeman signed me _____.
A. stop B. to stop C. stopping D. cease
9. They said the manager was the thief himself. I doubted _____ it's true or not.
A. that B. if C. which D. whichever
10. He has sharp eyes, and nothing can _____ them.
A. escape from B. escape in C. escape D. escape before
11. Mr. Smith is prudence _____.
A. himself B. itself C. in itself D. in himself
12. She packed _____ some bread and cheese for his dinner.
A. to her husband B. on her husband C. in her husband D. her husband

13. The bird shaped mud and sticks _____ nest.
A. to make B. making C. in making D. for making
14. In the hall were _____ three paintings.
A. hanged B. hanging C. hang D. hung
15. She couldn't speak, but she _____ her thanks.
A. smiled B. laughed C. giggled D. grinned
16. When I came into the garden I found that the grass _____ wild.
A. ran B. went C. came D. turned
17. On my birthday my mother made _____.
A. a cake to me B. me a cake C. a cake me D. a cake of me
18. I considered _____ Mr. Smith but decided that Mr. Jones was more suited to the job.
A. to employ B. to apply C. employing D. applying
19. I could see that his face was marked _____ suffering.
A. with B. of C. in D. on
20. We are forwarding _____ a list of the store's latest men clothing, together with prices.
A. up you B. for you C. you D. at you

Unit Seven

1. I can hardly convince my wife _____ the exciting game.
A. about B. on C. of D. to
2. He told me the accident yesterday. When he was asked to go to court, he denied _____.
A. to tell B. to have told C. to say to D. telling
3. It doesn't _____ to be rude.
A. benefit for B. worth C. pay for D. pay

4. Returning to my apartment, _____.
- A. my watch was missing B. I found my watch disappearing
C. I found my watch missing D. the watch was missed
5. I found the discussion _____.
- A. boring B. bored C. bore D. boredom
6. Professor Tate heard _____ about him.
- A. the students to talk B. the talk by the students
C. the students' talking D. the students talk
7. He couldn't help _____ that his wife was worried.
- A. except notice B. to notice C. notice D. noticing
8. Please open a window. I am _____ here.
- A. baked B. to be baked C. to bake D. baking
9. His wife died after she bore _____ another child.
- A. for him B. to him C. him D. on him
10. The school master exacted obedience _____ the children.
- A. of B. off C. out D. from
11. It's no use _____ to set a bargain these days.
- A. to expect B. expecting C. wanting D. you expect
12. The cold wind packed the snow _____ the side of the house.
- A. against B. to C. in D. on
13. You will get _____ when you touch the wire.
- A. shock B. shocked C. to chock D. shocking
14. Mr. Robinson knew that prices always _____.
- A. rose B. raise C. raised D. risen
15. Hold it and don't let _____. Or you'll be drowned.
- A. going B. go C. it going D. be gone

16. The chain has _____ foul of the plants in the water.
A. gone B. run C. come D. turned
17. She would certainly order them _____.
A. no smoking B. don't smoke C. not to smoke D. not smoke
18. We were short of fuel. I could smell trouble _____.
A. going B. to come C. coming D. to happen
19. I went to the hospital and found him _____.
A. being mended B. mending C. to mend D. to be mended
20. The general went to the streams to see if it had frozen _____.
A. solidly B. firmly C. hard D. solid

Unit Eight

1. Now let's set the ball _____.
A. to roll B. roll C. rolling D. being rolled
2. Tom is a clumsy man. Can you imagine him _____ ?
A. to do B. to cook C. doing D. cooking
3. The cook watched the meat _____ in the oil.
A. swimming B. to swim C. to be swimming D. swim
4. Do you remember _____ to Professor Smith during your last visit ?
A. to be introduced B. being introduced
C. having introduced D. to have introduced
5. Much to our surprise, she _____ to like Japanese food.
A. has become B. is become C. should come D. came
6. ——Can you ride a horse ?
——No, I never had the chance _____.
A. for learning B. for learning how
C. how to learn it D. to learn how

7. I'd rather _____ where I am.
A. to stay B. staying C. I stay D. stay
8. The soldiers forced their prisoners _____ their arms.
A. give up B. to give up C. giving up D. quitting
9. He hates people _____ him for money.
A. to ask B. asking C. for asking D. ask
10. They had pumped the well _____ and could get no more water.
A. being dry B. drying C. to be dry D. dry
11. After their quarrel, they sat in _____.
A. freezing silence B. frozen silence C. silence freezing D. silence frozen
12. In the end she netted _____ a rich man.
A. her B. to her C. to herself D. herself
13. Please spare _____ your opinions. Just tell me the facts.
A. me B. to me C. for me D. of me
14. We elected _____.
A. captain John B. John captain
C. of captain John D. for captain John
15. The book was old and soon _____ apart.
A. fallen B. fell C. ran D. run
16. The girl expressed her wish _____ her own living.
A. of earning B. earning C. to be earned D. to earn
17. In a period of inflation, the value of money drops as _____.
A. prices go the other way B. up go the prices
C. prices rise D. prices arise.
18. When I laughed she shot _____ an angry look.
A. to me B. for me C. at me D. me

19. He is always patterning himself _____ the man he admires.
A. for B. to C. upon D. into
20. She was so busy _____ for her trip to England.
A. to prepare B. to preparing C. preparing D. prepare

Unit Nine

1. We shall _____ if we stay long in the hot sun.
A. be fried B. burn C. fry D. be burning
2. You should take actions when the right moment offers _____.
A. itself B. it C. you D. to you
3. You can use telephone and spare _____ a visit.
A. you B. yourself C. to you D. for yourself
4. Are you going to leave _____ ?
A. the open windows B. the windows opening
C. open the windows D. the windows open
5. I cut the cake and dealt _____ three pieces each.
A. with the guests B. to the guests C. at the guests D. the guests
6. I have a swimming suit to _____ the cleaners..
A. to send to B. send to C. be sent to D. be sending to
7. In order to improve our condition, this new scheme must be _____.
A. adapted B. adorned C. addicted D. adopted
8. A month has passed and the work has not _____.
A. advanced B. been advanced C. being advanced D. had advanced
9. The captain sailed his ship _____ the narrow passage.
A. in B. through C. over D. across
10. You were late again this morning. I think you had better _____ on time.
A. to start to be B. start being C. started being D. to be

11. The old man caught ten strong boys _____ apples in his fruit garden.
A. to steal B. for stealing C. steal D. stealing
12. There are dark clouds in the east. A storm would _____ at night.
A. be breaking B. break C. becoming D. to come
13. But it's no use _____ her that.
A. telling B. you told C. to tell D. to telling
14. He _____ to be affected by many things.
A. forced B. permitted C. advised D. tended
15. I haven't got a chair _____.
A. to sit B. for to sit on C. to sit on D. for sitting
16. They would soon _____ for a drink.
A. going B. to go C. to go D. go
17. He forgave _____ the wrongs she'd done him.
A. to her B. her to C. her D. for her
18. I have _____ you, but I've damaged your car.
A. telling B. tell C. to tell D. for telling
19. Oh that I _____ at the theater to watch the exciting film now!
A. were B. was C. should be D. had been
20. The doctor insisted that he _____.
A. mustn't smoke B. won't smoke C. not smoke D. didn't smoke

Unit Ten

1. I _____ she's ill, and that's why she hasn't come.
A. collect B. amass C. accumulate D. gather
2. The old man offered _____ ten dollars for the book.
A. for B. me C. at D. on
3. The policeman stopped me and he said I was _____.

- A. speedy B. racing C. speeding D. being speedy
4. It is a custom in the village that people _____ the married pair with rice.
A. shower B. rain C. pour D. scatter
5. He declared himself _____ a member of the party.
A. to be B. being C. for being D. as being
6. Tim sat near the fire _____.
A. for getting warm B. getting to be warm
C. to get warm D. being warm
7. The city is big and noisy but I lived there for a while and I _____ it.
A. used B. am using C. used to D. got used to
8. My parents will come back soon and I advise you _____ now.
A. leaving B. to leave C. of leaving D. to be leaving
9. The king decided to continue Peter _____ chief minister.
A. as B. to be C. being D. for
10. Since you are free now, _____ you like to go to the concert with me ?
A. shall not B. ought C. should D. wouldn't
11. He was reported _____ a rich man.
A. to be B. being C. for being D. be
12. The doctor said you should quit _____.
A. to smoke B. smoking
C. stopping to smoke D. to stop to smoke
13. Mother asked me to sell the hens that didn't _____.
A. lie B. sit C. lay D. stand
14. I don't think the coat _____ well on you.
A. sits B. fixes C. stands D. puts
15. Reading is to mind _____ food is to the body.

- A. what B. that C. which D. of which
16. I'm not sure which restaurant _____.
- A. to eat on B. eating at C. to eat at D. for eating at
17. I didn't know _____ or go home.
- A. to wait B. if that I should wait
C. if to wait D. whether to wait
18. I lent you 8.5 dollars a month ago. I'll forgive _____ 50 cents.
- A. you for B. 0 C. you to D. you
19. We have our key lost, so we have to force the door _____.
- A. open B. to open C. opening D. to be opened.
20. He couldn't sleep because he got _____ at cards in the evening.
- A. to skin B. skinning C. skinned D. to be skinned

Unit Eleven

1. The girl piloted the old lady _____ to her seat.
- A. through B. over C. across D. into
2. John's idea involved _____ the task in time.
- A. to finish B. of finishing C. finishing D. in finishing
3. I discovered _____.
- A. how do B. how to do it C. how to do D. how doing it
4. Anna said in her letter that she'd appreciate _____ from you.
- A. to hear B. having to hear C. hearing D. to hearing
5. We have several novels _____.
- A. for you to choose from B. for your choice from
C. for the choice of yours D. for you to choose it
6. Look what father _____ me when he came from work.
- A. brought B. took C. carried D. fetched

7. The old lady ploughed her way _____ the crowd.
A. across B. through C. over D. beyond
8. The teacher failed me _____ the written paper.
A. in B. of C. at D. on
9. Everyone has a strong desire _____.
A. to succeed B. of success
C. succeeding D. being successful
10. The captain explained _____.
A. what winning B. how winning C. how to win D. how is winning
11. It's advisable that you _____ smoking.
A. need give up B. giving up C. must give up D. give up
12. The sick man made no endeavor _____ better.
A. getting B. to get C. being D. getting
13. The wine is made from the juice _____ from oranges.
A. expressing B. to expressed C. expressed D. to be expressed
14. You didn't hear us come in last night. That's good. We tried _____.
A. to be not noisy B. not to be noisy
C. not be noisy D. be not noisy
15. The clock _____ and we realized it was two o'clock.
A. hit B. struck C. turned D. rang
16. The manager ordered the work _____.
A. started at once B. to be started at once
C. to start at once D. at once start
17. The boy was _____ the chance to make a speed.
A. to give B. giving C. to be given D. given
18. I don't trust his promise _____ for a visit.
A. coming B. of coming C. to come D. being come

19. The information is fed _____ the Government department concerned.

- A. back to B. onto C. into D. back at

20. The ship was posted _____.

- A. to miss B. to have missed C. missing D. miss

Unit Twelve

1. He glanced his eyes _____ the titles of the articles.

- A. over B. on C. at D. to

2. We should remember our parents. We owe _____ a lot.

- A. him B. for them C. them D. on them

3. I like bread _____ with butter.

- A. spreading B. to spread C. being spread D. spread

4. I have enjoyed my visit here. I'll be very sorry _____.

- A. for leaving B. of leaving C. to leave D. with leaving

5. All the citizens delivered _____.

- A. of me all their support B. me all their support
C. supporting D. to support

6. Surely he isn't so foolish _____ not to realize that.

- A. so B. and C. but D. as

7. When Larry was a little boy, he _____ like riding.

- A. was used to B. used to C. did use D. used

8. Can you afford _____ me some money ?

- A. lending B. borrowing C. to lend D. to borrow

9. After such a bad accident you should count yourself _____ you are alive.

- A. being lucky B. lucky C. to be lucky D. be lucky

10. Thoughts of those lost record and account books _____ despair.

- A. made him with B. filled his mind with

- A. get B. to get C. getting D. got
2. I like swimming, but I don't like _____ in the pool.
A. swimming B. to swim
C. to swimming D. to be swimming
3. The teacher chose a book _____ me.
A. to B. on C. at D. for
4. You _____ your visa extended before it expires.
A. had better to get B. had to get better
C. had better get D. had better got
5. Do you remember ever _____ a car accident ?
A. seeing B. you saw C. to see D. see
6. Have you ever _____ the Atlantic ?
A. flew along B. flowed along C. flown across D. flowed across
7. Do you want to buy a camera ? Well, we have several models _____.
A. to choose from B. of choice C. to be chosen D. for choosing
8. The children were not _____ for the accident.
A. to blame B. to be blamed C. blaming D. being blamed
9. Fifty years ago the country was _____ apart by wars.
A. tore B. torn C. teared D. tearing
10. Each morning the teacher marks the pupils _____ present, absent or late.
A. being B. be C. to be D. Φ
11. The manager directed that I _____ to London.
A. went B. must go C. need to go D. go
12. The judge declared the prisoner _____ innocent.
A. being B. of being C. to be D. for being
13. Would you prefer that I _____ on Monday instead of On Tuesday ?

- A. go B. went C. to be going D. must go
14. Well, that's enough. Your story _____ true.
A. smells B. sounds C. looks D. wears
15. The hospital owes _____ for the construction of the wing.
A. the government 2 million dollars B. for the government 2 million dollars
C. to the government 2 million dollars D. 2 million dollars for the government
16. The teacher stared the students _____ silence.
A. to keep B. into C. keeping D. onto
17. I don't like noise and I've often _____ at this hotel for it's far away from the town.
A. remained B. rested C. stayed D. kept
18. I don't like John Smith. He is always _____ the experienced man who has seen everything.
A. acting B. to act C. to acting D. taking act
19. He is not honest. You can't trust him _____ anything right.
A. to do B. doing C. do D. for doing
20. As the ladies drank their tea, conversation began _____.
A. to flow B. to stream C. flowing D. streaming

Unit Fourteen

1. Please open all the windows. I smell something _____.
A. burning B. burn C. burns D. to burn
2. When I came into the room, he _____ this question to me.
A. asked B. put C. made D. took
3. He was _____ John by his parents but all his friends called him Jack.
A. named as B. named with C. named after D. named
4. It's high time she _____ her toys away.

- A. putting B. puts C. put D. has put
5. It's natural that an employee _____ his work on time.
A. finish B. finishes C. can finish D. will finish
6. The politician urged that all citizens _____ to the polls on election day.
A. may go B. can go C. went D. go
7. The hall can _____ 2,000 people.
A. be seated B. sit C. be sat D. seat
8. Using many symbols makes _____ to put a large amount of information on a single map.
A. possible B. it possible C. it is possible D. that possible
9. Wang's father, along with his two uncles, _____ in Shanghai one more day.
A. demand that he stay B. demands that he stay
C. demands that he stays D. demand that he stays
10. I remember _____ him somewhere before.
A. to meet B. met C. meet D. meeting
11. She asked that she _____ allowed to see her son in police custody.
A. would be B. could be C. be D. was
12. They were pushed into battle _____.
A. unprepared B. un-preparedly
C. not preparing it D. without preparing it
13. Why do you deny _____ that letter ?
A. to write B. written C. writing D. write
14. I never regretted _____ the offer, for it was not where my interest lay.
A. not to accept B. not having accepted
C. having not accepted D. not accepting
15. The committee members resented _____ them of the meeting.
A. the president that he did not tell B. the president not to inform

- C. the president's not informing D. the president that failed informing
16. It was recommended that passengers _____ smoke during the flight.
A. not B. need not C. could not D. would not
17. John is unfortunately devoid _____ a sense of humor.
A. with B. of C. to D. from
18. The faculty stipulated that the rule _____ abolished.
A. will be B. is C. be D. were
19. I beg _____ tomorrow's meeting.
A. to be excused to attend B. to be excused from attend
C. to be excused from attending D. to excuse from attending
20. —Why is the room full of smoke ?
—The chimney doesn't _____ well.
A. draw B. blow C. pass D. flow

Unit Fifteen

1. I wish I _____ to the movies with you last night.
A. have gone B. could have gone
C. could go D. went
2. I remember _____ this phrase somewhere.
A. come across B. to come across
C. coming across D. to have come across
3. He demands that she _____ his own records.
A. keep B. keeps C. may keep D. is keeping
4. The emblem on my car was just stolen, and I'm going _____ a new one put on.
A. to having B. to be having C. to have D. to be had
5. She _____ playing volley-ball very much.
A. has B. wants C. intends D. enjoys

6. We request the committee _____ our arrangements again.
A. to consider B. considering C. consider D. considered
7. I advised _____, but he turned a deaf ear to me.
A. him to smoke not B. him not to smoke
C. him to not smoke again D. not him to smoke again
8. The workers are all gone. Because of the bad weather the boss permitted them _____ early.
A. leaving B. to leaving C. to be going D. to leave
9. All right, John, it's time you _____ to bed.
A. went B. would go C. will be going D. ought to go
10. Some scientists say it is essential that mankind _____ the amount of air pollution in big cities.
A. be reduced B. reduced C. will reduce D. reduce
11. Prior to our conference, the executive director had requested that everyone _____ well prepared.
A. is B. be C. was D. will be
12. He ordered that parking _____ on main streets during the rush hour.
A. be prohibiting B. be prohibited C. is prohibiting D. was prohibited
13. The mother flatly rejected my suggestion that she _____ her daughter the next week.
A. met B. meet C. be met D. has met
14. Tell him he should quit _____ and get some sleep.
A. worry B. from worrying C. worrying D. to worry
15. The young worker still denies _____ the fire behind the store.
A. to start B. having started
C. to starting D. having been started
16. A good manager just knows _____.

- A. to handle this thing B. to have this thing handled
C. the way of handling D. how to handle this thing
17. I haven't decided how to get there, but I'm considering _____ a train.
A. take B. to take C. taking D. of taking
18. I will get my wife _____ on the trip.
A. coming along with B. to come on with me
C. to come along with me D. with me to come along
19. I don't like _____ you now.
A. to disturb B. to be disturbing C. be disturbing D. disturbing
20. The chairman requested that _____.
A. the members studied more carefully the problem
B. the problem was more carefully studied
C. with more care the problem could be studied
D. the members study the problem more carefully

Unit Sixteen

1. The director of this organization must know _____.
A. money management and selling B. how to manage money and selling
C. how to manage and sell the product D. Selling and to manage money
2. The teacher suggested that her students _____ experiences with ESP.
A. write on their B. writing on their
C. to write on their D. had written on their
3. A good student must know _____.
A. to study hard B. how to study effectively
C. being effective D. effectively to study
4. The doctor insisted that his patient _____.
A. taking it easy for a week B. take easy it for a week
C. take it easy for a week D. to take easy for a week

5. He gave _____.
- A. for the class no assignment B. the class no assignment
C. not to the class assignment D. the class for no assignment
6. Please go to the office of Miss Mary and _____ type these letters for me.
- A. her to B. have her C. she has D. has she
7. ——Shall I open the window? ——Yes, please. I wish _____ it.
- A. you would open B. your opening C. you will open D. you must open
8. ——If you'd been ten minutes earlier, you would have seen the doctor.
——But I couldn't help _____.
- A. to be late B. being late C. that I am late D. lateness
9. ——Will the cottage be cold? ——Yes. Make sure _____ the heaters.
- A. you light B. lighting C. you'll light D. for lighting
10. ——Have you finished your reading? ——No, but I wish _____.
- A. I would B. I had C. I should D. I must
11. ——Did Alice learn Spanish in high school? ——I imagine _____.
- A. that B. thus C. so D. it
12. No one can _____ him a better wife.
- A. do B. make C. perform D. serve
13. ——Does Bruce plan to give these flowers to Sandra?
——Yes, _____.
- A. he bought for them B. they were bought them
C. he bought them to her D. he bought them for her
14. ——How can Mary get her money back?
——I advised _____ to the manager.
- A. her speak B. her to speak C. that she speaks D. a speech by her
15. ——It's raining, and I have no umbrella. ——Here is mine. I insist _____ it.
- A. you to take B. that you take C. that you took D. you taking

16. —What sport do you like best? —I like to _____.
A. go ski B. going ski C. go skiing D. going skiing
17. —I'd like to go to Jazz concert tonight. — So _____.
A. do I B. will I C. would I D. I would
18. —Did your father go to New York? —No, the doctor suggested that he _____.
A. not to go B. won't go C. not go D. to not go
19. —Uncle Dick has already arrived. —Do you expect _____ to see him?
A. going B. go C. to go D. that you go
20. What did your aunt give John? —She _____.
A. gave to him the watch C. gave the watch him
C. gave the watch him D. gave him the watch

Unit Seventeen

1. —Those books are very expensive. — Do you know _____?
A. how much cost them B. how much they cost
C. they cost how much D. what do they cost
2. —I like your house very much. —Thank you, but it is _____.
A. badly in need of paint B. bad in need of painting
C. badly in needing of paint D. badly in need of painting
3. —Shall we go? No, _____.
A. not allowed B. not shall C. shall not D. let's not
4. —John behaved so strangely today. —I thought he wasn't acting like _____.
A. him B. himself C. he would D. he does
5. —Why do you treat me like that?
—As you treat me, _____ will I treat you.
A. as B. like C. so D. and
6. —What will you do during Christmas vacation?

- I don't know, but it's about time _____ something.
 A. I'm deciding B. I'll decide C. I'd decided D. I decided
7. —— Was the house-master strict ?
 —— Yes. He requested that we _____ television on week nights.
 A. not watch B. must not watch
 C. not be watching D. have not watched
8. —— How do you feel about your first year of research, Doctor Smith ?
 —— I think it's personally enjoyable and professionally _____.
 A. fulfilling B. be fulfilled C. fulfilled D. being fulfilled
9. —— Kumar can take his car apart and put it back together again.
 —— I certainly wish he _____ me now.
 A. teaches B. will teach D. would teach D. has taught
10. —— Has your typist returned your paper yet ?
 —— No, but she promised _____ by tomorrow.
 A. for me to have ready B. it was ready for me
 C. for me it was ready D. to have it ready for me
11. Why are all these mailboxes _____ ?
 A. painted gray B. gray painted C. gray painting D. painting gray
12. Let's stop here. _____ a beautiful place for picnic !
 A. Very B. So C. How D. What
13. —— I usually take a walk at night. —— You _____ do that.
 A. have better not B. had better not
 C. had better not to D. have better not to
14. —— You want to go. What did your aunt say ? ___ She asked me _____
 yet.
 A. not to B. don't C. that I shouldn't D. that I don't
15. —— What does your mother think about your haircut?
 —— She hasn't told me what _____.

15. Would you reach the bat _____ me ?
A. to B. towards C. for D. with
16. He has been deprived _____ his right to vote.
A. of B. from C. away D. off
17. Because of the war the country _____.
A. lay waste B. was lain waste
C. laid waste D. was laid waste
18. I'm sorry. I _____ in the accident yesterday.
A. had broke my right arm B. had my right arm break
C. broke my right arm D. had my right arm broken
19. Near the volcano _____ lava was flowing everywhere.
A. melting B. molten C. melted D. melting
20. Mr. Black Smith was appointed _____.
A. post master B. to the post master
C. being post master D. to be post master

Unit Nineteen

1. I was horrified _____ to study for the test.
A. discovering I forgot B. to discover I'd forgotten
C. at discovering I'd forgotten D. to discover I forgot
2. He has a little trouble _____ his car.
A. to be fixed B. fixed C. fix D. fixing
3. Keith eased the car forward, _____ his way carefully in the darkness.
A. picked B. picking
C. being picked D. having picked
4. Helen apologized for _____ the party.
A. her not being able to attend B. her being not able to attend
C. her being able not to attend D. not her being able to attend

5. _____, the inhabitants fled.
 A. The city having been taken B. The city being taken
 C. The city taken D. Having taken the city
6. _____, he works very late at night.
 A. Having chosen director B. Director chosen
 C. Choosing director D. Being director
7. He fell over some planks _____ lying around.
 A. left B. having left C. leaving D. leaves
8. The program was so exciting that the students kept their eyes _____ on the TV screen.
 A. to fix B. fix C. fixed D. fixing
9. _____ finished his homework, he had to stay at home at weekend.
 A. Having B. Not having
 C. Being not D. Having not been
10. —What does it cost to telephone your family in Teheran ?
 —It is too expensive _____.
 A. to be thinking it B. even to think it
 C. even to consider it D. to consider to do it
11. —Are you trying to convince him ?
 —No, there is no point _____ with him.
 A. arguing B. for arguing C. to arguing D. in arguing
12. —I'm sorry. Were you speaking to me ?
 —Yes, I was. Would you please _____ in the room ?
 A. not to smoke B. not smoke C. no smoke D. no smoking
13. —Why can't you and Bill go to the movie tonight ?
 —We are _____ history test tomorrow.
 A. supposed to having B. supposedly to have
 C. supposed to have D. supposedly to having

14. Accustomed to climbing trees, _____.
- A. I had no difficulty reaching the top
B. reaching the top was not hard to me
C. the top was not difficult for me to reach
D. to reach the top was not a problem
15. I want to go camping tomorrow, but my wife asked me _____.
- A. not to B. to not C. no D. not having
16. _____ back to earth like Newton's apple, many daring pioneers fell to their death.
- A. Drawn B. To be C. to draw D. Being drawn
17. She moved quickly and then jumped _____ off train.
- A. clearly B. clear C. in a clean manner D. cleanly
18. The bullet went _____ through his arm.
- A. clearly B. clean C. cleanly D. narrowly
19. He knows about it for he is _____ read.
- A. wide B. narrow C. widely D. narrowly
20. He slept with the door _____ open.
- A. wide B. widely C. broad D. broadly

Unit Twenty

1. The student has admitted to _____ on exam at least once.
- A. cheating B. cheat C. be cheated D. being cheated
2. The outer ear and the ear canal are subject to all of the various disorder _____.
- A. that affects the skin B. affected the skin
C. the skin affects D. the skin is affected
3. The local government decreed that the new laws _____ effect the following month.
- A. will take B. took C. be taken D. take

14. The _____ capacity of the stadium has been enlarged.
A. sitting B. seat C. seated D. seating
15. Singer as she is, Mary has always preferred _____ her own clothes instead of buying them in the shop.
A. make B. making C. made D. being made
16. Molds cannot produce their own food _____ their nourishment from living on dead.
A. but obtain B. to obtain C. obtain D. obtaining
17. The piano teacher would rather that her students _____ at least 45 minutes every day.
A. practices B. has to practice C. will practice D. practiced
18. When one leaves his car _____, he assumes that the mechanic will repair the car well.
A. repaired B. to be repaired C. repairing D. being repaired
19. Peter was _____ the football with him but he had forgotten.
A. to bring B. to be bringing
C. to have been brought D. to have brought
20. Home economists recommend _____ basic food items in large quantities.
A. to buy B. buying for C. buying D. buy

Section Three

Directions: Each of the following sentences is incomplete and is followed by four choices. Choose the one that best completes the sentence.

Unit One

1. I was worried _____ be back on time.
A. it that you'd B. so that

- C. whether you wouldn't D. that you wouldn't
2. The juvenile offender was released from custody on condition that he _____ a job immediately and _____ out of trouble for six months.
A. finds; stay B. find; stays C. find; stay D. found; stays
3. It was _____ that we went for a hike in the mountains.
A. so nice a day B. so nice day C. such nice day D. such nice a day
4. His anger was _____ he lost control of himself.
A. that B. so that C. such that D. in that
5. A number is an abstraction _____ no physical existence.
A. has B. to have C. that has D. which it has
6. _____ the sun was setting the farmers came home.
A. As B. Before C. After D. When
7. _____ it is equipped with excellent eyesight and hearing, a polar bear's most remarkable gift is its sense of smell.
A. As B. Although C. That D. Whether
8. I would have gone, _____ that you objected.
A. but B. now C. if D. only
9. Mr. Green is likely _____ about this meeting. Why hasn't he come ?
A. to have been notified B. to notify
C. to be notified D. being notified
10. The day is not far off _____ we shall have to plunge back in search of the wisdom of the people.
A. that B. when C. which D. before
11. Take warm clothes _____ the weather is cold.
A. in order that B. in case C. so that D. so
12. You can fly to London this evening _____ you don't mind changing planes in Paris.

- A. provided B. except C. unless D. as soon as
13. Many of the observations made by Leonardo a little _____ 400 years ago about the movement of birds' wings have been verified by modern photos.
A. greater than B. fewer than C. far more than D. more than
14. _____ deserves the award will certainly get it.
A. Who we think B. Whoever we think
C. Whoever does D. Whoever do we think
15. _____ we are alone, we can talk freely.
A. Now that B. Since now C. Considering D. For
16. _____ knows anything about it.
A. Either my husband and I B. Neither my husband and I
C. Neither I nor my husband D. Either I or my husband
17. Earthworms exist _____ adequate moisture and food and the necessary conditions are found.
A. and B. but C. however D. wherever
18. Some dieters find that after their dieting is over, they eat twice _____ they did before their diet.
A. more than B. as many as C. much than D. as much as
19. He promised to tend it _____ he reached the office.
A. the moment B. before C. while D. so
20. Nancy hasn't begun working on her PH.D _____ working on her master's.
A. still because she is yet B. yet as a result she is still
C. yet because she is still D. still while she is already

Unit Two

1. She asked me _____.
A. whether or not I had finished my work
B. did I finish my work

- C. is my work finished or not
D. if or not I have finished my work.
2. We are wondering _____ he would solve the problem if this method failed.
A. what else B. who else B. how else D. whom else
3. The town was no longer the sleepy little village _____.
A. it has been being B. it was C. it has been D. it had been
4. Peter considered _____ he should not tell her the truth.
A. how B. what C. whether D. if
5. Today's libraries differ greatly from _____.
A. the past B. that are past C. those of the past D. those past
6. John went downstairs so early for supper because he thought the bell _____.
A. will have rung B. has already rung
C. had already rung D. had rung
7. Coal and petroleum _____ plants became buried in swamps and decayed.
A. resulting B. resulted in C. resulted when D. resulting in
8. Much of _____ we do in school and play today can be traced back to the days of the ancient Greece.
A. those B. which C. that D. what
9. They did not wish to leave but felt that they _____.
A. had to B. were having to
C. were forced to D. had compulsion to
10. A thousand miles no longer _____ much to us today, for modern jets can easily get us over this distance within a matter of a few hours.
A. meant B. mean C. means D. will mean
11. _____ in this town will you find any shops open on Sundays.
A. Barely not any place B. At hardly any place
C. In hardly any place D. Scarcely not any place

12. _____ he does his work, I don't mind what time he arrives at the office.
A. So far B. So long as C. In case D. Meanwhile
13. So badly _____ in the car accident that he had to stay in hospital for a few months.
A. did he injure B. injured him
C. was he injured D. he was injured
14. Since it is already midnight, we _____.
A. might as well leave B. had better leaving
C. should take our leave D. ought to be leaving
15. Andrew left _____ he had drunk his coffee.
A. as soon as B. sooner than C. no sooner D. so soon that
16. This is the place _____ last year.
A. that he visited in B. that he visited for
C. which he visited D. who he visited
17. The longer the rain dripped from the trees, _____.
A. the erosion became bad B. the worse the erosion became
C. the erosion became much worse D. the worsening of the erosion
18. _____ in a mild climate, outdoor sports flourish in Hawaii.
A. I could expect B. As would be expected
C. Such should expect D. That might be expected
19. None was so deaf _____ those who won't hear.
A. that B. as to C. as D. while
20. Human behavior is mostly a product of learning, _____ the behavior of an animal depends mainly on instinct.
A. whereas B. so C. unless D. that

Unit Three

1. I've been studying here for four years and by next summer I _____.

- A. shall graduated B. shall have graduated
C. shall be graduated D. shall be graduating
2. Although she wrote stories and poems as a child, _____ she was twenty-three.
A. her first real success didn't come until
B. her first real success came until
C. not until her first real success came
D. it was not until her first real success came
3. — You ought to have gone to see your uncles yesterday.
— Yes, I _____.
A. should B. would be C. ought to D. should have
4. None of the women will admit that _____ broke the cup.
A. they B. she C. one D. all of them
5. Jane showed no sign of emotion till she reached home, _____ she broke down completely.
A. before B. as C. when D. while
6. In her writing, Elinor Wyle often dealt with her own personality as it was, rather than _____.
A. as others defined it B. other's definition
C. its definition by others D. it was defined by others
7. Tom is the only person _____ can finish this task.
A. that B. who C. which D. whom
8. If you merely read for entertainment, you may skip _____ you can follow the thread of the story.
A. so long as B. even if C. so that D. as far as
9. Perhaps they _____ by the time they see the doctor.
A. will be recovered B. will have recovered
C. will recover D. recover
10. He was listening to the radio _____ he heard a knock at the door.

- A. when B. as C. while D. whenever
11. George would certainly have attended the proceedings _____.
A. had he not had a flat tire B. had the tire not flattened itself
C. if the flat tire hadn't happened D. if he didn't get a flat tire
12. We got up early _____ we might start at six.
A. in case B. for fear that C. in order that D. such that
13. We get wiser _____ we get older.
A. if B. when C. as D. while
14. I could understand his point of view, _____ I'd been in a similar position myself.
A. in that B. has its C. have their D. have its
15. Each lead and connector _____ own position.
A. has their B. has its C. have their D. have its
16. _____ he was turning away from the house he noticed a mark on the door.
A. Before B. After C. When D. As
17. Mr. Cooper gave his money to those whom he considered _____.
A. as most worthy B. as being most worthy
C. was most worthy D. most worthy
18. She has no experience in teaching, _____ she has to learn the teaching method.
A. so B. nevertheless C. however D. so that
19. He was also captain of the boat and head engineer _____ he had to give orders and carry them out at the same time.
A. provided B. while C. so that D. in order that
20. On my present salary, I just can't afford such a car _____ your drive.
A. that B. what C. which D. as

Unit Four

1. I have the impression _____ a great many Chinese students first learn it as a grammar term rather than in any other sense.
A. that B. what C. which D. under which
2. I'm busy now; ask me about that _____ time.
A. no other B. some other C. the other D. other
3. _____ I am aware, there were no problems during the first six months.
A. As far as B. Much more than
C. So much as D. Except that
4. He will remain here if _____.
A. needed B. need to be C. need be D. need is
5. I have little doubt about his competence; _____ he is qualified for the job.
A. although B. moreover C. yet D. because
6. Human facial expressions differ from those of animals in the degree _____ they can be deliberately controlled and modified.
A. to which B. in which C. at which D. on which
7. Be sure to write to me _____ home.
A. when you get B. while you get C. when you get to D. as you get to
8. The violin will have to be carefully tuned before it _____.
A. can be played B. is being played C. should play D. has to play
9. She wanted to sunbathe _____ to swim
A. and B. but that C. rather than D. as well
10. Of course I'll attend the lecture, but I'm afraid I shall be _____.
A. a few minutes later B. a few minutes late
C. late a few minutes D. later a few minutes
11. The movie was so boring that most people _____ by the end.
A. had already been leaving B. had already left

- C. were already leaving D. were already left
12. She is a funny girl, _____ you can't help liking her.
A. or B. and yet C. but then D. and then
13. His work is better than _____ in the class.
A. anyone's else B. anyone else's C. anyone else D. anyone's else's
14. Was it _____ the professor regarded with such contempt ?
A. them who B. them whom C. those D. he who
15. _____ he wants to pass his test, he is taking driving lessons.
A. If B. As C. Unless D. for
16. This year will be difficult for this association because _____.
A. they have less money and volunteers than they had last year
B. it has less money and fewer volunteers than it had last year
C. the last year it didn't have as few and little volunteer and money
D. there are fewer money and volunteers than in the last year
17. Hardly had he come into the house _____ it began to rain.
A. as B. than C. when D. while
18. Some historians believe that John Jay has played _____ in American history as James Madison.
A. as an important role B. as important a role
C. an important role as D. a role as important
19. He broke the news to such _____ were present.
A. as B. whom C. who D. while
20. He didn't thank me for the present. That is _____ annoyed me.
A. what B. how C. which D. how it

Unit Five

1. Your mother's health is not _____ it ought to be.
A. that B. which C. whatever D. what

2. The best way to control rats is by seeing that they have as _____.
A. possibly little nourishment B. nourishment possibly little
C. little as possible nourishment D. little nourishment as possible
3. —Did you remember to give Mary the money you owe her ?
—Yes. _____ I saw her, I remembered.
A. while B. the instant C. suddenly D. momentarily
4. To produce one pound of honey a colony of bees must fly a distance equal to _____ around the world.
A. two times as much as B. twice that of
C. twice D. double those
5. I have not found my book yet; in fact, I am not sure _____ I could have done with it.
A. whether B. when C. what D. where
6. —I don't like your attitude.—I don't care _____.
A. what you like or not B. that you like it or not
C. if or not you like it D. whether you like it or not
7. I want to leave my car. Can you tell me _____ near here ?
A. there is a car park B. that there is a car park
C. is there is car park D. if there is a car park.
8. Such electron tubes _____ in a radio set are also found in a TV set.
A. that we use B. as we use
C. as we use them D. that we use them
9. I intended _____ the matter with you, but I had some guests then.
A. discuss B. to have discussed
C. having discussed D. discussing
10. Take an umbrella _____ it rains.
A. in any case B. in case C. because D. for
11. During the coming long vacation, the John's family are not planning to go

- _____.
- A. nowhere B. somewhere C. wherever D. anywhere
12. You ought _____ the matter to the manager the day before yesterday.
A. to report B. to have reported C. to reporting D. have reported
13. Great Salt Lake is fed by fresh water, _____ is about four to five times as salty as the ocean.
A. yet B. which C. that D. there
14. Upon hatching, _____.
A. young ducks know how to swim
B. swimming is known by young ducks
C. the knowledge of swimming is gained by young ducks
D. how to swim is known in young ducks
15. By next Sunday Tom _____ a whole month without smoking a cigarette.
A. will go B. has gone
C. will have gone D. has been going
16. It is highly desirable that a new president _____ for this university.
A. be appointed B. will be appointed
C. appoint D. is appointed
17. The doctor advised that _____.
A. Jim lain down every afternoon B. Jim lay down every afternoon
C. Jim lie down every afternoon D. Jim lies down every afternoon
18. The days were short, _____ it was now December.
A. for B. so C. whereas D. what
19. The songs of Bob Dylan are very popular among young people, who regard him _____ others.
A. as more superior than B. as more superior to
C. as superior to D. as superior than
20. The people at the party were worried about Janet because no one was aware

_____ she had gone.

- A. where that
- C. of where

- B. of the place where
- D. the place

Unit Six

1. We can assign the task to _____ is capable and trust-worthy.
A. whomever B. who C. whom D. whoever
2. Traffic in that city is congested ten times _____.
A. as badly as London's worse B. as bad as London's worse
C. as bad as London's worst D. as badly as London's worst
3. He's working hard for fear that he _____.
A. would fall behind B. may fail behind
C. fell behind D. would fall behind it
4. Tom likes to go to the movies _____ Mary prefers to go swimming.
A. at the same time B. whereby C. whereupon D. while
5. Angels was the first girl _____.
A. you talked to whom B. you talked to
C. whom you talked D. who talked you
6. Riding my bike home from school, _____ as I went around the corner.
A. a car hit me B. I was struck by a car
C. I was striked by a car D. I was struck with a car
7. When and by whom the islands of the West Indies _____ a matter of debate among archaeologists.
A. were first settled are B. are first settled was
C. were first settled is D. was first settled was
8. Electricity has found wide application in industry _____ it was discovered.
A. after B. when C. before D. since
9. Ford built up a factory which produced cars _____ had never been seen before.

C. and so they feel

D. and so they did feel

19. Steam turbines weigh _____ that produce the same amount of power.

A. less than piston engines and

B. less than piston engines

C. piston engines are less than

D. in piston engines less than

20. When the supply of gold ran out, the Spanish turned then to planting sugar, _____ in the long run proved even more lucrative than digging for gold.

A. that

B. which

C. because

D. for

Unit Eight

1. A man who has only book knowledge often gets nowhere _____ it comes to practical affairs.

A. where

B. which

C. when

D. if

2. He is _____ a ball player.

A. as good if not better than his brother as

B. as good as if not better than his brother as

C. as good as, not better than his brother like

D. as good as if not better than his brother as for

3. Tom listened carefully _____ he might discover exactly what John needed.

A. so as that

B. providing

C. in case

D. in order that

4. _____ is human nature, that a great many people are often willing to become white collar workers.

A. It

B. Such

C. This

D. That

5. Nature not only gave the Middle Atlantic region fine harbors, _____ a first-class system of inland waterways.

A. however endowed it on

B. so endowed that with

C. thus endowing this on

D. but endowed it with

6. The higher the standard of living and the greater the national wealth, the _____.

A. greater is the amount of paper is used

B. greater amount of paper is used

C. amount of paper is used is greater

D. greater the amount of paper used

7. Jean worked just so much _____.
- A. like what she was told to B. as she was told to
C. as to what she tried to do D. like she was told to
8. _____ learning English is concerned, Professor Young does not believe in systematic reading.
- A. As long as B. As early as C. So far as D. As soon as
9. I should say Henry is not _____ much of a writer as a reporter.
- A. that B. this C. so D. as
10. No sooner had the sun started to shine _____ it was clouded over again.
- A. then B. when C. as D. than
11. We _____ for an hour when the bus finally came.
- A. waited B. have waited
C. have been waiting D. had been waiting
12. The work is well done, _____ it could be done better.
- A. or B. do C. and D. yet
13. He will never be well again until he gets over the delusion _____ he is in perfectly good health.
- A. which B. that C. whether D. as
14. I passed my examination but it was a long time _____ my friends about it.
- A. that I didn't tell B. when I didn't tell
C. before I told D. since I have told
15. Why don't you go _____ ask her about it ?
- A. but B. and C. and / or D. or
16. _____ drinking and singing all night kept the neighbors from going to sleep.
- A. Jack's and his friends' B. Jack and his friends'
C. Jack and his friends D. Jack's and his friends
17. Sophia _____ it but she forgot.

A. some way B. anyhow C. in any way D. whatever

19. I'll start early _____ I oversleep.

A. lest B. if C. unless D. except when

20. —Did the audience participate in the play ?

— Yes, the actors _____ to involve the audience were successful.

A. whose were the function B. whom it was the function
C. of which the function was D. whose function it was

Unit Ten

1. That is the hotel _____ last year.

A. which we stayed B. at which we stayed
C. where we stayed at D. where we stayed

2. How long is it _____ you left London ?

A. before B. since C. when D. that

3. The stout fellow over there is _____ the great magician, Charlie William, himself.

A. no other but B. no one than C. none other than D. no other than

4. It is because English is very useful _____.

A. why we study it hard B. what we study hard
C. that we study it hard D. which we study hard

5. I came here not because I like the play but _____.

A. hoping to see the theater B. hope seeing the theater
C. I hope to see the theater D. because I hoped to see the theater

6. The reason for the traffic accident was _____ one of the drivers lost control of his car.

A. why B. that C. when D. because

7. When we reached the cinema, John said " This is the first time _____ here."

A. I am coming B. we are coming C. we visit D. I have been

8. Most name-brand goods are sold by driver-sales, people _____ service and deliver to the major retail store.
A. whose B. of whom C. who D. whomever
9. They keep telling us that it is vital we _____ there on time.
A. are B. be C. must be D. would be
10. The team _____ waiting for finally arrived.
A. we have B. whom we have been
C. who we are D. we have been
11. _____ a table spoonful of soil can tell us so much about the structure and early story of the moon.
A. It's remarkable that B. It's remarkable fact that
C. It's remarkable of that D. It's remarkable about that
12. _____ drugs play an important role in managing the disease, it has become apparent that weight control and regular exercise are also important.
A. Whether B. When C. While D. As
13. — You missed a golden opportunity.
— Yes, I _____ that job when it was offered.
A. shall take B. should take
C. shall have taken D. should have taken
14. The situation was _____ political observers found it difficult to predict.
A. so that B. except that C. but that D. such that
15. Provided that you _____ with us the police would not prosecute you.
A. co-operate B. will co-operate
C. co-operated D. have co-operated
16. I'd rather you _____ anything about it for the time being.
A. do B. don't C. didn't do D. didn't
17. I know nothing about our teacher _____ he's been teaching for years.
A. besides B. except C. but D. except that

7. Einstein was one of the greatest men _____ ever lived.
A. that B. who C. whom D. whose
8. The whole path _____ electricity travels is known as a circuit.
A. which B. that C. from which D. along which
9. It is stated in the annual report that the number of micro computers _____ 7000.
A. have reached B. are reaching C. reach D. has reached
10. A new prescription cannot be sold until its manufacture provides _____ it is both safe and effective.
A. that B. whether C. which D. what
11. He has just finished fixing the door, and it looks as though _____ a very hard job.
A. it must have been B. it was
C. to be D. it must be
12. When we reached the station, the train had still not arrived; so we _____.
A. need not hurry C. needn't have hurried
D. didn't need to hurry
13. Most substances contract when they freeze so that the density of a substance's solid is ____ of its liquid.
A. than the higher B. higher than the density
C. the density is higher than that D. the higher the density
14. Although _____ happened in that developed country sounds like fiction, it could occur elsewhere in the world.
A. that B. how C. which D. what
15. I wish I _____ to the movies with you last night.
A. went B. did go C. could go D. had gone
16. _____, Gerald would have been a rich man.
A. Was he to enter business B. Had he entered business
C. If he was to enter business D. If he were to be entered it

17. _____ more careful, his ship would not have sunk.
 A. If the captain were B. Had the captain been
 C. Should the captain be D. If the captain would be
18. They are not so willing _____ this picture hung in the corridor.
 A. as we have B. as we to have C. as us to have D. as have we
19. There is in the United States no single city or region _____ speech is the model for the rest of the country.
 A. where B. that C. when D. whose
20. The science of medicine, _____ progress has been very rapid lately, is perhaps the most important of all the sciences.
 A. which B. to which C. in which D. with which

Unit Twelve

1. _____ the danger was, they prepared to face it.
 A. What B. Whatever C. Whichever D. However
2. You are really incompetent. It _____ hours ago.
 A. should have been finished B. must have finished
 C. must be finished D. should be finished
3. It is heartening to see millions on the earth who had nothing but a record of misery and hunger _____ to improve their life.
 A. having the chance B. have the chance
 C. to have the chance D. who have the chance
4. Africa, _____ has been incorrectly called “the continent without history” may well have the longest human history in the world.
 A. as B. where C. which D. that
5. Hardly ever _____ get a good job these days without a good education.
 A. people might B. do people C. people can D. have people
6. Give me your telephone number _____ I need your help.

- A. unless B. whether C. so that D. in case
7. _____, work songs of often exhibit the song culture of a people in the fundamental form.
A. They occur where they are B. Occurring
C. Where they occur D. Where do they occur
8. He is a good student _____ he is sometimes careless.
A. except for B. but what C. but that D. except that
9. ——Who is John Smith ?
——He's the speaker _____ heard last night.
A. we had B. we C. we would be D. whom we be
10. ——What is that building for ?
_____ the garden equipment is stored.
A. There is in which B. This is where
C. The building that D. That's the building which
11. He is a good man and is known _____ to everyone.
A. so that B. such as C. as such D. so such
12. _____ strong were anti-Japanese sentiments, in fact, _____ foreign cars were banned from the executive parking garage.
A. More; than B. So; and C. Rather; that D. So; that
13. Mr. Smith _____ we have a sincere respect, is quite outstanding in the field of natural science.
A. which B. that C. for whom D. with whom
14. It rained all night and all day, _____ the ship broke in pieces.
A. during that time B. which time
C. of which time D. during which time
15. I have never dined with you, sir. And I see no reason _____.
A. how should I now B. why should I now
C. how I should now D. why I should now

16. Rubber differs from synthetic plastics only _____ it is produced naturally and not in the laboratory.
A. that B. in that C. if D. in which
17. The ambassador heard that _____ at his post a year longer.
A. he will have stayed B. he be staying
C. he would be staying D. him to stay
18. Just _____ French people enjoy their wine, _____ the British people enjoy their beer.
A. like; as B. as; that C. as; like D. as; so
19. —Did you see any foreigner at the party ?
—Yes. He was the only foreigner _____ I saw at the party.
A. that B. who C. whom D. which
20. What I heard is strange, _____ it is true.
A. or else B. and yet C. as yet D. but that

Unit Thirteen

1. The behavior of gases is explained by _____ the kinetic theory.
A. what scientists call B. what do scientists call
C. scientists call D. scientists call it
2. I would resign _____ I take part in such a plot.
A. before B. until C. rather than D. more than
3. _____ explain it to him, he still didn't understand.
A. Hard as I tried to B. Hard I tried to
C. As I tried hard to D. Tried as I hard to
4. I waited for him _____ he came back.
A. after B. till C. when D. as
5. I feel as if I already _____ inside me all the medicine that could cure the disease.
A. had B. have C. be had D. being had

6. The house was built on a hillside, _____ was a pleasant, winding valley.
A. by which B. below which C. beneath which D. under which
7. _____ the giant panda belonged to the bear or raccoon families was a matter of zoo-logical contention for years.
A. Whenever B. However C. Whether D. Whatever
8. I am going to the technician, but you _____ with me.
A. need not to go B. need got not C. need not go D. do not need go
9. After the manuscript was refused, the author no longer knew any other publisher _____ to send it.
A. who B. whom C. to whom D. by whom
10. Don't give up. It won't be long _____ you find a well-paid job.
A. that B. after C. before D. when
11. I never heard _____ stories _____ he tells.
A. such; that B. so; that C. such; as D. such; which
12. I'd help you with pleasure, _____ I'm too busy.
A. only B. and C. or D. only that
13. She is pleased with _____ you have given her and all that you have told her.
A. that B. which C. what D. all what
14. It is necessary that you _____ present at the meeting.
A. could be B. be C. may be D. will be
15. _____ he was a boy, he often went skating in winter.
A. While B. As C. Whenever D. When
16. I wish you had come with me. Then I _____ so much trouble.
A. would have not B. wouldn't have
C. wouldn't have had D. hadn't had
17. The man looks like a scholar, _____ he is not.
A. which B. who C. as D. whom

18. _____ he realized it was too late to return home.
 A. No sooner it grew dark when B. It was not until dark that
 C. Hardly it grew dark when D. Scarcely it grew dark than
19. She has met a lot of difficulties, _____ has not lost courage.
 A. but B. and C. however D. otherwise
20. He was connecting wires to a complicated type of electric plug, _____ requires a good deal of patience.
 A. which B. a task which C. about which D. this job which

Unit Fourteen

1. I'm not sure _____ I could have done with my slippers.
 A. whether B. where C. when D. what
2. I'm telling this _____ you should make a mistake.
 A. so that B. though C. until D. lest
3. Were it not for friction, we _____ to walk on this earth of ours.
 A. would not be able B. were not able
 C. should not have been able D. are not able
4. _____ their policy can be changed, the future for that country will be indeed bleak.
 A. Even if B. Unless C. Now that D. as long as
5. This tour of the generating station is very interesting, which is the first opportunity I _____ of seeing how electricity is produced.
 A. am having B. had C. will have D. have had
6. John came home late last night, _____ very early this morning.
 A. or other B. or vice versa C. or else D. or rather
7. She said she would work it out herself _____ ask me for help.
 A. and not to B. but not C. and prefer not D. rather than
8. _____, we must never stop our efforts to produce weapons of war.

- A. No matter how the obstacles may seem
B. How great the obstacles may seem
C. No matter how great the obstacles may seem
D. However the obstacles may seem great
9. I didn't tell her truth _____ she would get angry with me.
A. to such an extent that B. in order that
C. for fear that D. for the reason that
10. _____ African elephants are more difficult to tame than Asian ones.
A. Generally convinced that B. It is generally believed that
C. That it is generally believed that D. What is generally convinced that
11. A serious transportation crisis is facing developing countries _____ rapidly growing cities are creating new transportation needs.
A. in that B. of whose C. in which D. of which
12. _____ you feel lonely, come and talk to me.
A. However B. Whenever C. When ever D. Whatever
13. Randall found Duperol's style of writing to have many more complexities _____.
A. than Ann Katrin B. than style of writing
C. than Ann Katrin's D. than Ann Katrin's writing
14. I'd rather you _____ anything about this matter at present.
A. do B. don't have C. didn't have D. didn't do
15. He must be joking, _____ he is crazy.
A. and B. or else C. so D. also
16. Although he is very old, _____.
A. he is still full of vigor B. so he is full of vigor
C. but he is full of vigor D. however he is full of vigor
17. The whistle scared the boy and his cow _____ were crossing the bridge.
A. which B. that C. who D. when

8. We tried moving the piano, but it looked better _____ it was originally.
A. where B. when C. as D. than
9. _____ you mention it, I remember seeing the lady come on board the ship an hour ago.
A. Before B. If C. Now that D. Until
10. Randolph is the boy _____ scored the winning points for the basketball team.
A. whom I think B. I think who
C. who I think D. I think whom
11. _____ bricks, workers press clay into blocks and bake them to the requisite hardness in a kiln.
A. Being made B. The making
C. To make D. Made
12. The knee is the joint _____ the thigh bone meets the large bone of the lower leg.
A. where B. which C. why D. when
13. When the nurse took his temperature, it was two degrees above _____.
A. average B. ordinary C. regular D. normal
14. He occasionally smokes but never gets himself addicted _____ it.
A. with B. at C. to D. on
15. Please draw a triangle _____ it will equal this square.
A. such that B. such C. so D. in order
16. He does not bother about trifles _____ his elder brother does.
A. the way B. the manner C. the behavior D. the style
17. _____, I did not believe every word he said.
A. That I was fool B. Fool I was so
C. That fool as I was D. Fool that I was
18. _____ he knows a lot.

- A. Young as Jack is
- C. Young as is Jack

- B. Young Jack is as
- D. Jack is as young

19. She was strong, _____ she was so small.

- A. for that
- C. for even if

- B. for all that
- D. for no matter how

20. He shouted at the top of his voice, _____ he might be heard.

- A. to the end that
- C. to the aim that

- B. to the purpose that
- D. to the end and aim that

Section Four

Directions: Correct or improve the following sentences.

Unit One

1. Such potent wines were drunk by the ancient Greeks that they had to be diluted with water.
2. Civilizations have been born, have developed, and died. This might seem parallel to the life of biological organisms.
3. Each patient must wait his or her turn.
4. The people expected Orwell to shoot the elephant. Although he felt it was wrong, he shoot it anyway.
5. Owners of early factories employed children because they could hire them at low wages and they were easy to control.
6. President Franklin Roosevelt gathered professors from all over the country, which were known as the Brain Trust.
7. In the average Broadway play they present an odd picture of American life.
8. Patricia ran down the stairs and knocked at the landlady's office, whom she had never seen before.
9. His hair was the color of dry sand, which was naturally wavy.
10. My father is a lawyer. It is a profession he hopes I will enter.

11. The ballots came in sealed envelopes to the secretary. She said that since there was no opposition to any of the candidates she had opened them herself.
12. Although it rather dry in Texas, it is a great cotton state.
13. Tom is in Mr. Blunt's Spanish class, who is a demanding instructor.
14. The house is located in a small town which I intending to buy.
15. When a student hands in an examination to the instructor, he is not always satisfied with it.

Unit Two

1. He said he would like to begin by discussing the three plays already mentioned separately.
2. On Tuesday I almost walked to the park.
3. He nearly lost ten dollars last night.
4. This book has only the answer to your questions.
5. Let me tell you about a girl who joined an organization I belonged to recently.
6. She told the child to stop crying in a nasty way.
7. As a fraud, I think he will really qualify.
8. I got acquainted with the students and we were talking as though we had known each other for years in not time at all.
9. Jane will not have a hard time finding a new boy friend with her good looks.
10. The blaze was extinguished before any serious damage was done by the local fire department.
11. Then the final draft can be typed, knowing that you have done your best.
12. Making all sorts of noises and walking oddly, the passerby is often frightened by an intoxicated person.
13. I was glad to be going to the party for several reasons.
14. After soaking in cold water until pliable, you tuck the head of the drum around a wooden hoop.
15. To understand why I wanted to change school, I will give the facts leading up to my decision.

Unit Three

1. Other students strive desperately for a position on the team that they will never obtain.
2. Mrs. Smith is moving to an apartment to be near her daughter that she has rented for the winter.
3. While learning to read and write, my mother supervised my piano practice at home.
4. My average was the highest in the French class, which won a prize for me.
5. When filled out and returned in the enclosed envelope, I will be glad to open your checking account.
6. Several of the shirt buttons were replaced by safety pins which were missing.
7. Grandpa would never eat lobster if not boiled.
8. When straightening her clothes, the new mirror came in handy.
9. The lumberjack raised his arm above his head which was very muscular.
10. They planned during the evening to leave by the side door.
11. Unless cut to the ground very early, the home owner will be doubly sorry he has weeds.
12. The pills going down my throat after a minute tasted like sour cream.
13. Although I study my English thoroughly, because of my bad handwriting, I never receive a very good mark.
14. Because I finished writing the theme in half an hour I was ready to go on the picnic.
15. When I went back to the reference room with help from a librarian I found the book I wanted.

Unit Four

1. Lichens can extract moisture they need from the air, having no root system.
2. She discussed the test that her history professor marked unfairly with her friend.
3. I did not pass the course, caused by failing the examination.
4. The force of the batter's swing carried him across the plate almost falling on his face.
5. Being in dire need of valves, piston rings, and a general overhauling, he found his

car had no compression at all.

6. When overloaded, a dangerous list appeared in the ship.
7. The tourist looked at City Hall coming down Main Street.
8. Although as pretty a baby as my elder sister, my birth was practically unnoticed.
9. My father will give me a job after completing my college education.
10. After completing my college education, my father will assign me a new post.
11. At first the pain did not dry properly causing me to do the job again.
12. Although in need of pain, she liked the car.
13. The ordinance of the township commissioners will go into effect next month forbidding fireworks after long delay.
14. After telling him that the dog was just what she wanted, her father asked her what they should name it.
15. To ask for a raise, the boss should be approached tactfully, thus not offending him.

Unit Five

1. Each stone figure was between seventy-five to one hundred feet high.
2. It was due to this lack of an iron industry that led the South to defeat.
3. It was not until Penn had spent seven months in this wilderness.
4. By acquiring all this information on human anatomy does not mean that we are going to become scientists.
5. From a beautiful sunset I can derive more pleasure in contrast with another new dress.
6. I was disappointed of the book for it was not what I had expected.
7. Because people invariably are disturbed by the novel seems to me to show the ability of the author.
8. It is not until after the duel does one feel relief from this hostility.
9. Greeted by unfriendliness made me want to leave New York as soon as I could.
10. I believe my cousin is a person that everything he has on his back was on credit.
11. This essay helped me understand what college football can and is doing.
12. The men asked themselves what they should do in the new circumstances they found themselves.

13. The school was too large, too many people, and too few friends.
14. On the bulletin boards were posted samples of the students' work varying from cutout, pictures and handwriting.
15. For years he has read travel books, especially Tibet.

Unit Six

1. She, since the manager seemed to dislike her, simply went to the other company.
2. Charles IV signed at Barcelona on October 5, 1802, Louisiana over to France.
3. I was forced to carefully examine my beliefs.
4. The corruption of the English language, Orwell says, is caused by in large measure politicians.
5. We were at this time of the year surprised to see anyone carrying skis.
6. I was taught that I was to never place my finger on the trigger.
7. The curtains hide the garages that can through the big double window be seen.
8. He, because he had got in the way of the soldiers, had been wounded severely.
9. A certain kind of wave has according to many reports been a signal of the coming of a typhoon.
10. Joe Louis collected through his fights millions of dollars.
11. George felt, after the game was over, depressed.
12. We are staying at, for the time being, the local hotel.
13. We knew that Alice was, when she accepted the invitation, getting herself into a tangle.
14. I am one of those unfortunate people who seem to all times forget names.
15. He had left, as the relatives learned when the will was read, his property to charity.

Unit Seven

1. If one works reasonably hard, you can learn to speak a foreign language in a few months.
2. My brother wants to be a musician, but architecture is my future profession.
3. When I reached the pier, I suddenly notice that the tide is low.
4. As he looked at the front page, a gasp came from his throat.

5. The company is looking for an engineer to take charge of their new office in Vancouver.
6. As soon as you know the assignment, go to the library; you should take out at least two books on your subject.
7. Old cars are fun, but new one gives less trouble.
8. Will you please tell me how an inexperienced person can learn what is expected of them here ?
9. He spoke to the stranger and asks what ails him.
10. He repaired the radio and then his homework received his attention.
11. Before inventor made the first steamboats, many technical problems had to be solved by them.
12. A freshman should have perseverance and flexibility and should learn to do one assignment promptly.
13. The insects of early October were making their ancient patterns of sound; the moon, still bright, was low in the sky; and the distant hoot of an owl sounded nuts.
14. Looking at the calendar, she suddenly remembered that her cousin is coming.
15. Sometimes he won small sums of money, but they were lost the next time he went to the track.

Unit Eight

1. Baseball is my favorite game, and it is played in hot weather.
2. Mr. Smith is my chemistry instructor, but his wife is rather pretty.
3. Edward made collections of American short stories, one which I like very much being "Evening" by Zona, who lived in Portage, Wisconsin.
4. I don't know what experience in my early childhood accounts for my fear of snakes, but I shall not spend another summer in the pine woods.
5. Happiness is not always mere relaxation; an Einstein derives great satisfaction from understanding the nature of the physical universe.
6. The elective system, which President Eliot of Harvard introduced into the curriculum of the American college, has fragmented the common body of knowledge which all educated men once possessed.

7. There are many books in my father's library which I have not read, but book knowledge is not always a substitute for practical experience.
8. Germany, a country which possesses very rich coal reserves, attracts thousands of tourists.
9. Our school had four chemistry teachers; the students rate three as average, and the fourth was notorious for his high academic requirements.
10. Germany, a country of great natural beauty and many fine museums, attracts thousands of industrialists.
11. The boy never knew his father was a gang leader who was wanted by the police for years, but they never had his description, only his suspected activities.
12. Some of Orwell's essays made me think over what I had read-whether I would do the same thing in his place and be just as guilty, and the essay called "Shooting an Elephant" is one of these essays.
13. Another suggestion that came to me when I was trying to improve my vocabulary in order to become a writer was to read a dictionary-either the big one zealously guarded by the library dragons or the one I can never forget I got as a prize in the high school poetry contest -but after taking several nights away from my favorite television programs I found that his advice was the greatest possible waste of time.
14. When she finally learned to drive a car, she did so without knowing how to get along in traffic, and this was a serious handicap to her.
15. All the social activities I have mentioned are to be recommended for the students enjoyment but if indulged in too vigorously they will distract his mind and his grades will suffer, which is not good; because his purpose in being at a university is to get an education, which is an obvious truth often forgotten.

Unit Nine

1. The hunter kicked around in the honeysuckle when out ran a big rabbit.
2. I ran out of ink, thus being unable to finish my theme.
3. We drove from Cheyenne to Vancouver, seeing some very spectacular mountain ranges.
4. College is a place in which we prepare ourselves for adult responsibilities.

5. The truck was rolling along smoothly when it suddenly exploded.
6. The prize was given yesterday that was for the best essay by a freshman.
7. When lightning struck a tree beside the tennis court, we were playing our first game.
8. They were bored with endless talk when they began to play games.
9. The architect's plans look good and we were at first intending to build the house next spring, but now we have decided to wait.
10. Alice had the best grades in her high school class and of course she is going to college.
11. I have never met Ralph but I have heard a great deal about him, so I feel as if I know him.
12. Socrates had a large group of followers and they would do almost anything for him.
13. I have not read the assigned book so I will not have my review ready so I may have trouble in this course.
14. I always come to school on the bus and it is crowded all the way.
15. California is like Italy and has a Mediterranean type of climate.

Unit Ten

1. In reality it was really Tom who did all the work.
2. I was transferred from that school to another school.
3. This course is to a large extent composed mainly of laboratory work.
4. Shylock was provoked into cruelty by under-served provocation.
5. The subject I was made to pick made me sick.
6. George, a solidly built man of six feet, looked clean and neat, as usual.
7. I had missed the train by this time to add to all my troubles.
8. Love is not rational but it may make the right decisions, luckily for the human race.
9. The boy fell with a painful thump on the pavement when he was learning to skate.
10. Each state in the United States is allowed to control its own affairs to a large extent.
11. Robert Louis Stevenson lived in California at one time.

- tribes.
7. Neither of these reasons justifies our allowing him to pass after he did so poor in
 A B C D
 the physic examination.
8. Most people know that it is like to have their blood pressure, but few understand
 A B C
 the meaning of the numbers used to record blood pressure.
 D
9. That angry outburst of Father's last night resulted in our guests packing up and
 A B C
leaving soon.
 D
10. I was not at all surprised to hear of Jim Dolan winning poetry contest.
 A B C D
11. Irregardless of what people say, I must repeat that these are the facts concerning
 A B C
 the require-ments for the position.
 D
12. When my commanding officer first looked up from his desk, he took Lieutenant
 A B C
 Bob to be I.
 D
13. The visitor set his glass on the table and seated down in a chair opposite his host
 A B C
 who was seated on the sofa.
 D
14. There is, of course, little chance of a military defeat, but the war can be lost here
 A B
as the first place is lost in France 13 years ago.
 C D
15. He also told frightened events that had taken place in his native state of Conneticut
 A B

and listed the fearful things he had seen on his nightly walks in Sleepy Hollow.

C

D

16. One of Aesop's fables tells of a fox that was very happy because he has nothing to eat for many days.

A

B

C

D

17. In cold weather, the individual rails of a railroad track can separate by as many as half an inch.

A

B

C

D

18. Genetic material from extinct creatures can be recovered and studied for clues as to a particular species evolved.

A

B

C

D

19. Cottage cheese, an American favorite, can made easily at home from milk and lemon juice.

A

B

C

D

20. The river of West Pakistan supplies water to the nearby tillers living on the river basin but they can not irrigate the famine areas 200 miles away.

A

B

C

D

Unit Two

1. If all ingredients are mixed properly, the soup should taste deliciously.

A

B

C

D

2. The recently introduced system of identification cards in no way infringe the rights of the citizens of the United States.

A

B

C

D

3. The pig, though generally thought to be lazy and fat, can run with amazing speed, especially when their young are threatened.

A

B

C

D

4. He insists that you are on time for the appointment you made.
 A B C D
5. Learning a foreign language is especially difficult for those who had never
 A B C
 learned one before.
 D
6. Most early settlers provided for themselves before sharing their surplus with others.
 A B C D
7. The World Wildlife Fund supports scientific research and conservation projects
 A
designed to save endangered animals and preserve its natural habitats.
 B C D
8. Understanding the culture habits of another nation, especially one containing so many
 A B
diversified sub-cultures as the United States, are a complex, bewildering task.
 C D
9. Even though computers operate without human prejudice, some people fear that its
 A B C
logical solution can be harmful to men.
 D
10. According to the statement issued by the Department of Commerce and Labor
 A B
 employment has been declining steady since the middle of last year.
 C D
11. A well-known doctor has said that it is impossible to understand people's health
 A B
problems without understanding the circumstance from which he comes.
 C D
12. He took his friend advice as to what he should do.
 A B C D
13. I sometimes wish that my university is as large as State University because our
 A B

facilities are not so complete and up-to-date as the latter's.

C D

14. No sooner had he begun to speak when an ominous muttering arose from the audience.

A B C D

15. Mary and Joe want to go to seaside this summer, which sounds like a good idea to me.

A B C

D

16. The instructor told us that to remember details is as important as to take notes while listening to the lecture.

A B C

D

17. Accounting is generally agreed as more an art than a science.

A B C D

18. Leading scientists are often the kinds of person who have enjoyed intellectual challenges during all their lives.

A B C

D

19. Traditionally, there has been only two major political parties in the United States—the Republicans and the Democrats.

A B C

D

20. Women have done advances in reaching high positions in business, but there are still few women in government.

A B C

D

Unit Three

1. Physics has been called a exact science, but those who know it best are well aware of the inaccuracy of this description.

A B C D

notes on how people die.

D

13. The Industrial Revolution began about 200 years with the continuous development of power-machines, the growth of economics, and the mass production of goods.

A B C

D

14. Students were eager to attend Professor Goalgar's lecture Friday and having a conversation afterwards.

A B C

D

15. Neither the inability to hear nor the inability to vocalize will necessarily prevent a child to master a linguistic system.

A B

C D

16. There was no denying that the President seemed having the knack for looking bad when he was on the right track.

A B C

D

17. Ever since the Civil World War, the status of women was a live social issue in this country.

A B C D

18. During the Second World War many of Poland's greatest cities, including Warsaw

A

and Danzig were all but destroyed, their museums looted and their historic buildings had been burned.

B C

D

19. Because of the effects of tidal friction, the earth's rotation, which forms the basis for time unit, is gradually slow down.

A B

C D

20. It is imperative that a graduate maintains a grade point average of "B" in his major field.

A B C D

Unit Four

1. Every doctor must know both medical theory and technique so that he can apply it in helping his patients.

A B C D

2. The entire audience was attracted because the dancers played so wonderful.

A B C D

3. The committee for local development demanded that the new railway station was built in the suburbs.

A B C D

4. There is an increasingly amount of evidence that more and more young people are taking an active interest in politics.

A B C D

5. For near to three hours we waited for the decision, only to be told to return the next day.

A B C D

6. His latest proposal was neither a new idea and not a sound one.

A B C D

7. The only logical deduction was that the fish had swam all those hundreds of miles which separated the island from the coastal rivers.

A B C D

8. Whether a speaker choose to use colloquial or formal English depends on the audience they are addressing.

A B C D

D

9. An epigram is usually defined to be a bright witty thought tersely and ingeniously expressed.

A B C

D

10. Since his paper contains fewer mistakes than ours, his will be entered in the contest.

A B C D

11. If I would have tried to handle the heavy case without Paul and him, I could never have moved it.

A B C

D

12. The medieval craftsman was by modern standards, very poor paid both for his labor and for the product of his craft.

A B C

D

13. Unfortunately, the technology employed to send men at the moon has little relevance to the problems of the inner city.

A B C

D

14. Because he could not think clearer, his efforts in trying to solve the problem have failed.

A B C

D

15. Students which cause riots often harm the very principles for which they are fighting.

A B C D

16. Many women have wrote numerous articles about important issues in economics.

A B C D

17. Sitting up late last night, Tom not only read the assignment but also many poems by one of his favorite poets.

A B C

D

18. While visiting New York city, the tourist should take a boat ride around

A B

Manhattan to familiarize yourself with the city.

C D

19. Cathy arrived so late that she couldn't find anyone to carry the luggage she brings.

A B C D

20. It is the spirit of such men like Captain Smith that makes me aware that flying is an

A B C

enduring miracle and joy.

D

Unit Five

1. Those whom are admired and loved are men and women who have done their best

A B C

in whatever they do.

D

2. The students were obedient and did what the teacher had learned them to do.

A B C D

3. As a result of having on a wet shirt for quite a while, he had one of the worse cold

A B C

he had ever had.

D

4. I would go to visit that beautiful lake but I couldn't get in touch with you while

A B C D

I was in.

5. Even though Sylvia promised she would be there on time, she did not come at the

A B C D

party.

6. Mycophobia, that which is the unreasonable fear of mushrooms, is said to

A B

affect whole populations in Europe, Asia and Africa.

C D

7. Professor Quincey told his class that the best way to practice English is to write

A B C

constant letters.

D

8. The surrounding country was green, pleasantly untouched as yet in the war that

A

B

during the past two months have nearly destroyed the entire town.

C

D

9. Consider all the possibilities, I really believe that I would prefer not to make any

A

B

C

D

changes now.

10. Until the day she died, the old lady who had lived by the University was working

A

B

C

part time in the language lab.

D

11. The industrial trend is in the direction of more machines and less people.

A B

C

D

12. My name is William, and most of my friends call me Bill for short.

A

B

C

D

13. Buying the textbooks for his courses, paying his tuition, and renting a locker

A

took most all the money he had saved from his summer job.

B

C

D

14. The detectives were finally able to arrest the man who his finger prints had been

A

B

C

D

found on the table.

15. You may prefer to travel by plane, but if the weather is bad, you might have to

A

B

C

D

use the train.

16. Sheriff Hoggun felt sullen when he was compelled to arrest Mr. Guyot, his neighbor,

A

B

who he knew had never stole before.

C

D

6. "Leave us face the fact that we're in trouble !" she shouted.
A B C D
7. My experience as a reporter of sports event indicate that the San Francisco Giants
A B
cannot possibly lose the pennant.
C D
8. If you saw the number of pancakes he consumed at breakfast this morning, you
A B C D
would have understood why he is so overweight.
9. The thief undoubtedly waited for Mr. Baker to go out and entered by the back
A B
window and removed the silver without ever been seen.
C D
10. Every candidate who has swam the length of the pool will be given a certificate
A B
stating that he has proved his competence.
C D
11. He has sat at the table for several hours and drank considerably more wine than
A B
is good for his health.
C D
12. I don't like these sort of shoes because they are always hurting me and never
A B C
broken in.
D
13. Microbiologists believe that tiny plants and animals are feeding, growing, and
A B
even in reproduction in the clouds.
C D
14. Sometimes the only way to continue a friendship is through letters. Most people
A B

enjoy to receive letters, but few seem to be very fond of writing them.

C D

15. He was disappointed that he angrily chose the worse movie he could find, in the

A B

hope that it might at least seem funny.

C D

16. Van Gogh did not belong to any one school of paintings; he borrowed from all

A

schools. Moreover, he developed a brush technique that was unique his own.

B C D

17. We advise him to give up smoking and do a lot of exercises.

A B C D

18. After the traffic accident he laid in bed for two weeks, waiting for his wound to heal.

A B C D

19. Everyone was in their room when the bell rang.

A B C D

20. While he was in college, he learned both English as well as Japanese.

A B C D

Unit Seven

1. The Law of the Sea Conference is an attempt resolving major differences among

A B

countries with conflicting interests.

C D

2. The principal speakers at the news conference agreed that the ways in which

A B

television can educate a person is almost infinite.

C D

3. In the year 1910, Halley's comet—the comet that has flared in 1066 over the

A B

Norman invasion of England—was again brightening the night skies of earth.

C D

4. The robin will defend their territory by aggressively approaching any bird that
A B C
enters within the nesting area it has chosen.
D
5. Admirers of American ballet have made the claim that its stars can dance as well
A B C
or better than the best of the Russian artists.
D
6. Neither tears nor protest effect their parents' decision.
A B C D
7. A careful driver watches the road and went slowly or quickly depending upon the
A B C
condition of the road, the visibility and the traffic.
D
8. Having studied your report carefully, I am convinced that neither of your solutions
A B C
are correct.
D
9. Despite Williams, who managed at maneuvering his ship without the help of a
A B C D
harbor pilot.
10. We should not wonder that their jaws fell open; I am sure you would too, if
A B C
you had seen him when he arrived.
D
11. Newspapers both receive and run so many advertisements each day that it is far
A B
too great a task to expect them to check each item for the honesty and integrity
C
of their claim.
D

12. He often confused the remaining of the chemical reagent with the product and so had to do several of the experiments over.
A B
C D
13. I think we should look in the matter further before signing the contract, shouldn't we?
A B C D
14. If you stay over four years in the United States, you will have to have your visa extend to one more year.
A B C
D
15. Mr. Brown often wore a heavy coat because he was not used to live in such a cold climate.
A B C D
16. Having lost the election, the presidential candidate intends supporting the opposition despite the objections of his staff.
A B
C D
17. This writing is finally becoming a regularity standard text in American Literature course.
A B C D
18. The refugees are very much upset because they have been deprived to their homeland.
A B C D
19. The city's study of automobile accidents revealed that there are fewer deaths since the new traffic light system had been in operation.
A B C
D
20. When it gets so cold to play outside, Jack and his teammates on the baseball team practice in the school gymnasium.
A B C
D

Unit Eight

1. After all the players had returned to the room and to take off their uniforms, the coach felt greatly proud of them.
 A B C
 D
2. Neither of the boys who have been helping us know when this game is over.
 A B C D
3. Children are supposed to do things the way their elders have learned them.
 A B C D
4. He felt so badly after the failure that Ethel and I had to ask whomever we met to do the work for him.
 A B C D
5. The sudden and unexpected raise in the cost of living proved to be an unforeseen advantage because it helped him decide to leave the country at last.
 A B C
 D
6. The woman admitted to the doctor that her little boy had eat in the back room and ate everything he could find.
 A B
 C D
7. Christopher is trained in accounting, and no one is the group but he would have realized that the money is missing.
 A B C
 D
8. Reading two novels by Steinbeck during the summer vacation, I look forward to reading more of his works.
 A B C
 D
9. Coming to Marseilles as a youth, Joseph Conrad very easy made friends.
 A B C D
10. The storm moved northward yesterday, dropping five inches in snow during the
 A B C D

- six hours before now.
11. Although the reconnaissance patrol performed courageously, the location of the
A B C
enemy troops were not discovered.
D
12. Swimming is a more strenuous daily exercise than to walk.
A B C D
13. Because her eyes so often troubled her, she decided to make an appointment for
A B C D
an oculist as soon as possible.
14. We city dwellers often fail taking advantage of our many opportunities for
A B C
cultural enjoyment.
D
15. One can argue that the way in which questions are asked frequently determine
A B C
their answers.
D
16. She died when she was ninety, not of old age, but that she injured her head when
A B C
she fell a flight of stairs.
D
17. The equipment in the office was badly in need of to be repaired.
A B C D
18. The president refuses to accept either of the four new proposals made by the
A B C D
contraction.
19. Having finished his term paper before the deadline, it was delivered to the professor
A B C
before class.
D

20. Since William had been seriously ill for several months, his parents were concerned
 A B
about him wanting to return to school full-time.
 C D

Unit Nine

1. The prices of the works of art are as high that most museums cannot afford to buy
 A B C D
them.
2. The watchman does his routine every night. Trying every door, walking through
 A B C
 hall and listens for any unusual sounds.
 D
3. When science, business, and art learns something of each others' methods and goals,
 A B
 the world will have come closer to cultural harmony.
 C D
4. It usually takes much less time to fly from one country to another than travelling
 A B C
by train.
 D
5. Despite of the big amount of research by our historians, there are many more
 A B
 discoveries that remain to be made about life in the New England towns.
 C D
6. Not until the tenth serious accident occurred at the busy intersection, the Highways
 A B
Department agreed to install the four-way stop sign.
 C D
7. For overcoming the weakness of his leg muscles, Brennan regularly took long hikes
 A B C

on Mount Adams, the great peak of the Cascades.

D

8. The winner's photograph was of an old barn window covered with a delicate lacy forest.

A

B

C

D

9. It is surprising that a good swimmer like he has neglected to learn about artificial respiration.

A

B

C

D

10. The idea where electricity cannot be created or destroyed seems to imply that electrons and protons cannot be created and destroyed.

A

B

C

D

11. In order to obtain a driver's license in this state, one has to present your birth certificate as proof of age.

A

B

C

D

12. The new physics laboratory, because it was not equipped proper for advanced research, was considered obsolete by the time of its completion.

A

B

C

D

13. I can answer the question for you but I don't feel like it.

A

B

C

D

14. The audience is taking their seats in the music hall.

A

B

C

D

15. I remember taken to Paris as a small child.

A

B

C

D

16. Though we failed to fixing up the machine last time, I suggest trying it once more.

A

B

C

D

17. What affect the law will have on our drivers and how it will affect our lives remain to be seen.

A

B

C

D

18. The teacher, along with a committee of bright students, have compiled a reading list.

A B C D

19. Perhaps the most important quality shared by all notable scientists is a strong

A B

determination to solve a problem, when it arises or to seek an explanation for the

C

phenomena.

D

20. A torrential downpour, in addition to long stretches of road construction that made

A B

it necessary to slow down to fifteen miles an hour, have so delayed us that we

C

shall not be able to be on hand for the ceremony.

D

Unit Ten

1. No matter how crises of the moment dominate the deadlines, the world's energy

A B C

shortage is the most critical challenge of the next decade and beyond.

D

2. The story of Jonah implies how love cannot be separated from responsibility.

A B C D

3. In just the last few years, football is become more popular than baseball in that country.

A B C D

4. Sociologists study not only complex urban societies and also many societies

A B C

which are not familiar to most of us.

D

5. Upon completing his examination over the patient, the doctor offered his

A B C

judgement of her conditions.

D

6. It is surprising that Marquesne is such a fine writer, for he has not read only a few
 A B C
 books other than his own.
 D
7. If Creg would have tried harder to react the opposite shore, we would not have
 A B C
had to pick him up in the boat.
 D
8. Mr. Johnson felt hurriedly as he tried to make his way through the crowds to the
 A B C
 ticket window only five minutes before the bus was to leave.
 D
9. When we had finished to read the article, we began to discuss it among ourselves
 A B
in spite of our ignorance of chemistry.
 C D
10. Damascus, generally believed to be the oldest continuously existing city in the
 A
 world, survived the ancient empires who were its successive conquerors.
 B C D
11. In restaurants in Costa Rica, the coffee is always more stronger than it is in the
 A B C D
 North American restaurants.
12. All major urban areas need increased recreational facilities to meet the demands
 A B
of the rapid growing population.
 C D
13. Nobody speaks more clearly than him, but his writing is often difficult to make out.
 A B C D
14. Although I was more busy occupied than usual when her letter reached me, I
 A B C

made every effort to answer it without delay.

D

15. He was looking impatient at the salesman, who showed no signs of preparing to

A

B

C

D

leave.

16. When the other guests and I had rose to leave the table, the host pushed back his

A

B

chair and stood instantly to accompany us to the living room.

C

D

17. The writer of this article says that within the foreseeable future, people can be

A

B

able to visit the moon and even stay there for short periods of time.

C

D

18. "Have you a Chinese-English Dictionary of this kind?" "No, but I wish I have,"

A

B

C

D

19. I let John borrow our radio for the afternoon. That's all right, but I wish he

A

B

C

bought one for his own.

D

20. "It's high time the speaker gets a move on," thought one of the men.

A

B

C

D

附录二 参考答案

Section One

Unit One

1. Her hair waves naturally.
2. Curses pour from his lips.
3. She danced her way into the heart of everybody.
4. He phoned me to say he couldn't come.
5. The red flag was flying.
6. A hot drink warms on a cold day.
7. The baby is a boy after all, so you win!
8. They topped the hill at last.
9. The children are playing doctors and nurses.
10. The car backed through the gate.
11. We'll film the whole day tomorrow.
12. I didn't get the car going.
13. Won't you drop me at the corner ?
14. The news passed round the whole country.
15. The pictures Tom sells bring him 5,000 dollars a year.
16. The meat is swimming in the oil.
17. Spring rain brings summer flowers.
18. A strange knock caught our attention.
19. Please hand me the book.
20. The storm broke at night.

Unit Two

1. His foolish manners lost him his job.

2. Your remarks decided me to help you.
3. He shouldered his way to the front of the crowd.
4. He and his wife often fight.
5. The girl's head was swimming.
6. My mother-in-law stays with us this week.
7. She broke our code.
8. My sister nursed a grudge against me.
9. He was driving a nail.
10. Don't park the car in the street.
11. How did the trouble start ?
12. You mustn't rock the boat at this difficult time.
13. The Government nurses science and culture.
14. Her letter painted a wonderful picture of her life in Africa.
15. Mother doesn't say much but she feels.
16. The chief worked us hard in this office.
17. She danced her daughter round the room.
18. I feel very cold.
19. That will save me going into town.
20. Tyler boxed unfairly this time.

Unit Three

1. I'll get you that book.
2. Mother banked 1,000 dollars today.
3. You are always cutting me short.
4. The boss wishes our work complete in time.
5. He has farmed all his life.
6. The law still stands.
7. The news of the President's murder rocked the whole world.
8. The child is cutting its first teeth.
9. I'll never forget meeting you three years ago.
10. This coat need mending.
11. He first noted the importance of birth control.

12. ——I am sorry I broke your teapot. —— Forget it.
13. His cruel remarks cut me deeply.
14. I'll ring you back.
15. Actions speak louder than words.
16. At rush hours traffic moves slowly.
17. The policeman waved the traffic on.
18. The nurse has put the children to bed.
19. The children have fallen asleep.
20. That would save me much trouble.

Unit Four

1. Please run me a nice hot bath.
2. The temperature falls 4 degrees.
3. His dirty clothes put his wife to shame.
4. The old lady watched her chance to cross the road.
5. That cow won't milk well.
6. The hen is sitting.
7. Her answer wants politeness.
8. The wound in his leg will dish his chance in the race.
9. Don't forget to bring the book.
10. After his death, his children missed the old man.
11. The doctor's advice is sounding in my ears.
12. These shares will return a good rate of interest.
13. The library can house one million books.
14. She freed the bird from its cage.
15. He moved an amendment to this law.
16. This pipe smokes poorly.
17. My friends pushed me to enter politics.
18. They watched the sun set.
19. Our army showed the prisoners kindness.
20. They haven't met.

Unit Five

1. The coat doesn't sit well on you.
2. How much petrol does your car take ?
3. The soldiers were digging themselves in.
4. You are not supposed to fool her.
5. After the rain the fish takes better.
6. That matters much.
7. I'll get the children ready for school.
8. She is learning to be a dancer.
9. The sky shows red.
10. Heaven send you a safe journey!
11. Would you show me the book ?
12. What's showing at the cinema tonight ?
13. All the windows are left open.
14. I'll get the car moving.
15. They worked hard until they dropped.
16. A bullet sang past my ear.
17. Her voice was soft and I lost some of her words.
18. She danced her thanks.
19. A heavy fog clouded the hill-top.
20. I missed seeing that singer on television.

Unit Six

1. The court sat until all the arguments for both sides had been heard.
2. I didn't want people playing the piano at all hours of day and night.
3. I can't date the old city exactly.
4. The results support our original idea.
5. Give the blind man two dollars. You won't miss it.
6. How far does this big gun carry ?
7. I felt something hurting me.
8. What led you believe I was ill ?
9. She always seems sad.

10. Can you sell your chief your new idea ?
11. He ran one mile per 4 minutes.
12. He sold his brother his car.
13. The man pushed his way to the front of the crowd.
14. The victory sent us into great excitement.
15. Her hat and her dress don't match.
16. Well, please cut!
17. The crowd lined the streets.
18. He looked all interest.
19. She holds the office of chairman.
20. The nurse closed my wound.

Unit Seven

1. At last the prisoner talked.
2. Suddenly smile lit her face.
3. The increase in food prices hits the housewife's pocket.
4. Would you explain yourself ?
5. The table takes too much space.
6. Her nervousness began to tell as soon as she came in.
7. The explosion sent glass flying everywhere.
8. His speech held everybody silent.
9. First comes my father.
10. He was given three months.
11. The mother read the children a story.
12. The quarrel rose from misunderstanding.
13. Please push the door shut.
14. The accident sent me looking for a new car.
15. I tied second place in the examination.
16. He's a pretty good student, but sports are where he really shines.
17. Signs of worry lined his face.
18. Life holds many surprises.
19. The child was eyeing the cake.

20. I would like to have some pictures taken.

Unit Eight

1. Gentlemen, I give you the President!
2. ——Why did you cut school yesterday? —— I fell ill.
3. The rock just missed my head.
4. He's soon run the car into the parking lot.
5. The bread won't rise properly.
6. Did the vaccination take?
7. He left a wife and two children.
8. She jumped the gun again.
9. Nothing will excuse his cruelty to children.
10. I don't mind a cup of tea.
11. Don't do anything foolish. You know how people talk.
12. The unpopular tax was soon lifted.
13. She keeps her sister's children.
14. Writing exercises your mind.
15. Would you mind waiting for half an hour?
16. Now we rise for dinner.
17. They returned the prisoner guilty.
18. The dog held its tail between the legs.
19. The water came to my neck.
20. His son gave him much trouble.

Unit Nine

1. When will the shops close?
2. Don't wait dinner for me, for I'll be late.
3. The horse jumped the stream.
4. He can always be reached on telephone.
5. Nurse, would you take his temperature?
6. The bell rang.
7. He drove her mad.

8. I heard him say so.
9. We soon dropped behind.
10. My daughter ordered herself a new dress.
11. The car rode smoothly.
12. Can you drive me to the station ?
13. I'm not having dancing in my house on Sundays.
14. They cut themselves free with a knife.
15. The doctor ordered him a week's rest in bed.
16. The chimney won't draw.
17. Last night I was visited by a strange dream.
18. We hit a difficult point in our work.
19. ——Your new dress doesn't fit you. —— You'd better change it.
20. This interesting story raised a laugh.

Unit Ten

1. That kind of music dated.
2. He led a hard life.
3. My mother keeps the important religious holidays.
4. This plan has not been cleared.
5. The journalists milked nothing from him.
6. My ears rang with their laughter.
7. The mother sang the baby into sleep.
8. The stick helps him walk.
9. Let the argument rest here.
10. Can you reach me the teapot ?
11. Moving the furniture gave me pain in the back.
12. The acid had eaten into the metal.
13. I couldn't help him say that.
14. His manner stamped him as a military man.
15. The river rose after the heavy rain.
16. The waves dance in the sunlight.
17. The house wants painting.

18. He jumped the queue.
19. The horse cleared the fence clearly.
20. We took a flat in the city.

Unit Eleven

1. The chairman voiced the feeling of the meeting.
2. Where does the path join the road ?
3. Where can I change the English money ?
4. His long absence raised doubts about his safety.
5. Spring will soon return.
6. His ability carried him to the top of his profession.
7. The young man has grown his hair long.
8. The old lady was dressed in red today.
9. He means her no harm.
10. You must have been dreaming.
11. The door pulls easily.
12. ——I don't know how much it is.
—— Let's call it 50 dollars.
13. The train has pulled out.
14. The thermometer reads 33 degrees.
15. Please fill me this cup with tea.
16. How would this do ?
17. They reported seeing a new star in the East.
18. Help yourself, please.
19. I didn't catch what you said.
20. Many serious diseases are carried by insects.

Unit Twelve

1. The two teams drew 5 points to 5.
2. May God rest his soul.
3. The car hit the wall.
4. They failed to catch the early bus.

5. They raised a monument after the war.
6. Where do the two paths cross ?
7. I don't call English a hard language.
8. I can't pull the cupboard open.
9. The hills sweep round the hidden valley.
10. Please fetch me a clean handkerchief.
11. I'll make you an offer of 100 dollars.
12. Fear swept over him.
13. She planted her noisy children on us.
14. They called the boy Tom.
15. Success comes when you work hard.
16. They've been dating (each other) for months.
17. I remember to post the letter.
18. They joined their hands (together).
19. The soldiers stormed the city.
20. We must radio the message at once.

Unit Thirteen

1. His secret died with him.
2. He always remembers me at Christmas.
3. He joined the army at the age of 18.
4. The doctor studied the shape of the wound.
5. Clouds capped the hills.
6. She colored when she saw me.
7. The papers were burnt to ashes.
8. The country was laid in ruins.
9. My hair works loose when I run.
10. I made myself a cup of coffee.
11. By her hard work she won her a place in the school team.
12. She turns nasty if you laugh at her.
13. They laughed her out of the house.
14. The potatoes have burnt black and we cannot eat them!

15. It's pouring.
16. The clock loses.
17. Try her. She might lend you 50 dollars.
18. The hostess iced the beer.
19. The soldiers stand a weekly inspection.
20. I would never question his honesty.

Unit Fourteen

1. The top of this box won't lift.
2. The wind troubled the surface of the lake.
3. The judge heard the case.
4. He wants to marry me but I can't stand the sight of him.
5. She dropped a valuable suggestion at the party last night.
6. The two balls kissed.
7. I inched my way through the narrow space between the cars.
8. She knocked him senseless.
9. John took sick.
10. You should have thrown me the ball.
11. The four rivers empty into the lake.
12. The policeman tried each door and window.
13. The skirt is already ironed.
14. Stop thief! Stop thief!
15. ——Has your horse hurt his foot ?
——Yes. So I can't race him.
16. It's rude to point.
17. He kicked the chair away.
18. That will land him in prison.
19. He turned to crime.
20. We waved our parents good-bye.

Unit Fifteen

1. The news traveled fast.

2. Her unexpected words knocked me cold.
3. The coat can keep her warm.
4. Spring has play on the branches of the willows.
5. Now Tom is leading.
6. This lawyer tries to trip witness up by asking confusing questions.
7. She has a little English, but much science.
8. The warship was flying the national flag.
9. He dropped his voice.
10. He taught us English.
11. The play is drawing well.
12. She could never bring herself to kill an animal or a bird.
13. He beat his way out of a thick forest.
14. When she fired the gun, it kicked so hard.
15. The train won't run on Sundays.
16. The hostess has laid the table.
17. I only have good children in my house.
18. Our boss always flies British Airways.
19. He drives his workers very hard.
20. She threw me an angry look.

Unit Sixteen

1. The child's nose is running.
2. On the day of mother's funeral my father cried real tears.
3. Will 10 dollars cover the cost of the dress ?
4. He can fly a plane.
5. Please dress the baby, George.
6. Fish can not keep.
7. — Did you meet her in the park ?
— Yes, but she cut me cold.
8. The dog bit the criminal to death.
9. Night draws near.
10. The old lady cut me a piece of cake.

11. The prices jumped in that year.
12. He drew a lot of money out.
13. His supporters had been planted in the crowd.
14. After the birth, mother and child are doing well.
15. Your crime will cost you your life.
16. The machine is running.
17. This time she tops the bill.
18. The reporters were sent to cover the political trial.
19. Tom was floored.
20. They dressed the Christmas tree on Wednesday.

Unit Seventeen

1. The old car engine has been knocking a lot.
2. —Did he really marry the girl ?
—Yes, he braved his father's displeasure.
3. Age clouded his memory.
4. She smiled her greetings.
5. The party is running 3 candidates in the next election.
6. I have been ironing a whole day.
7. He is meant to be a great man.
8. We raced the sick woman to hospital.
9. Our holiday lasts ten days.
10. That will do you no harm.
11. Don't let yourself be ruled by your feelings in this matter.
12. The bed can sleep three persons.
13. The clock gives the right time.
14. They bagged a rabbit.
15. Please knock before entering.
16. The mosquitoes are really biting this evening.
17. Do you mind the window open ?
18. The rich uncle rained gifts on the child.
19. The decision lies with you.

20. He blew me a beautiful glass.

Unit Eighteen

1. Let me stand you a dinner.
2. The food gets cold.
3. Show the gentleman in, please.
4. I felt moved to speak.
5. The air pollution is really beginning to bite.
6. The bird landed on the branch.
7. This player has been booked twice.
8. Jean always copies the way I dress.
9. This car drives easily.
10. What time does your watch say ?
11. We landed safely.
12. The wind blew her hair.
13. I need one more stamp before my collection is completed.
14. I was really snowed by his smooth manners and wild stories.
15. Who is running this country ?
16. The fish don't bite today.
17. They have attempted to move the talks from a consideration of principles to more practical ideas.
18. He tried to reason me out of that idea.
19. That hot weather lasted until September.
20. That picture of her doesn't do her justice.

Unit Nineteen

1. Will you choose, please ?
2. Please draw the chicken first.
3. The thermometer recorded a temperature of 90 degrees.
4. He planned to go to Tianjin.
5. You should shine your shoes before going out.
6. Our cow is carrying again.

7. I'd love you to come again.
8. Experience has made him a man.
9. It will take you four hours to go from here to New York.
10. His complaints went unnoticed.
11. I passed him the bread.
12. The sound grew louder.
13. She made the material into a dress.
14. The new system has thrown us all into confusion.
15. The law carried by 310 to 306.
16. The motor engine won't catch.
17. The chief was sentenced to three years in prison.
18. Can you place these two homeless children ?
19. The lake can receive the water from the three rivers.
20. He is doing his teeth.

Unit Twenty

1. That old hen doesn't lay.
2. You should book the seats on the plane as soon as possible.
3. The cat will bite if it is cornered.
4. The house faces the park.
5. Bad news sells newspapers.
6. ——Is she interested in your plan ?
——No, she doesn't bite.
7. The story moved us to tears.
8. Rest your head against the wall!
9. The door suddenly flew open.
10. Would you choose me a novel ?
11. Please take him another cup of tea.
12. Which road goes to the station ?
13. This photograph makes her very young.
14. Her cries brought the neighbors running.
15. You are getting fat; you should exercise more.

16. My girl friend and I posted the letters on the same day, so they crossed in the post.

17. I broke my son's spirit at last.

18. His parents don't correct him.

19. He felt the truth of her words.

20. It is too expensive. You have been cheated!

Unit Twenty-one

1. When shall we eat ?

2. He keeps a family of four.

3. The storm swept the whole country.

4. She is hard to please.

5. The boat began to ship water.

6. At night the city fell.

7. I'll trouble you to remember your manners!

8. They named the boy Tom.

9. The curtains hang well.

10. Someone passed me a lead shilling.

11. This knife won't cut.

12. Can you do any cooking ?

13. I can read your thoughts from your face.

14. This film is fetching large audience.

15. Man, your playing really sends me!

16. In autumn leaves color.

17. I like him to come again.

18. The king made her his queen.

19. Should a murderer go unpunished ?

20. She swept us a bow.

Unit Twenty-two

1. Please play us something happy.

2. His words rang true.

3. He ordered the men to fire the guns.
4. The boss used him badly.
5. The shop opens at ten.
6. Where's that book hiding ?
7. My feet are killing me!
8. This course presents no difficulty to me.
9. I want to speak my mind to you.
10. They won the top of the mountain.
11. Oranges grow here.
12. He kicked a goal.
13. May I present this new singer ?
14. This road accident points the need for more careful driving.
15. She watched to see what I would do.
16. My mother nursed all her life.
17. "Children" is understood to mean those under 14.
18. Did you notice her leaving the house ?
19. Gifts rained down on the child.
20. He played her a nasty trick.

Unit Twenty-three

1. Please play us your favorite record.
2. The forest reaches for many kilometers.
3. My coat needs mending.
4. My father will turn me out if he knows about it.
5. They'll move next week.
6. The room emptied very quickly.
7. That shop keeps everything.
8. The old man's eyes swept the distance.
9. He pocketed half of the interest.
10. The police want him for murder.
11. I'll phone you the news.
12. Tears rained down her cheeks.

13. The President named him Secretary of State.
14. The train is timed to arrive at 6 o'clock.
15. Her face fell when she heard the news.
16. After the storm, the sky cleared.
17. Last night I dreamed a sweet dream.
18. He has cleared his debts.
19. His evil talk planted the seeds of hatred in our hearts.
20. We ship our products to Britain.

Unit Twenty-four

1. He kissed his wife and children good-bye.
2. His genius as painter flowered very early.
3. We must order our affairs better.
4. We discovered her to be a good cook.
5. She is a very good swimmer and often races.
6. I'm late; I must fly.
7. The wind kissed her hair.
8. She pursed her lips to show her dislike.
9. The storm soon spent itself.
10. An old friend married them.
11. Can the good weather hold ?
12. That mistake had killed his chances.
13. Although he was troubled, he presented a calm smiling face.
14. He stamped his feet in anger.
15. She married money.
16. The radio was playing too loudly.
17. The waves washed him away.
18. He ordered me to leave the classroom.
19. This makes our third party this month.
20. Please pour me a cup of coffee.

Unit Twenty-five

1. 2 from 8 leaves you 6.
2. He died happy.
3. He planted a knife in her back.
4. The lonely old man drank his troubles.
5. The farmer let the field rest for a year.
6. This clock doesn't go.
7. He finally kissed the dust.
8. This town covers 10 square kilometers.
9. Please fill this prescription.
10. What does this English word mean ?
11. This machine runs by electricity.
12. The rain laid the dust.
13. He can cover 50 kilometers a day.
14. This river had been fished too much.
15. Does this meet your hopes ?
16. I thought you were joking.
17. I dared him to jump.
18. He was placed first.
19. She died a rich woman.
20. The visitor left you a letter.

Unit Twenty-six

1. You can't match him in English.
2. Laughter filled the room.
3. It will cost you to go by air.
4. The moonlight kissed the sea.
5. He's been fooling all the time.
6. Mrs. Jones receives on Monday afternoon.
7. Officer, dress those men to the right.
8. He has painted the door blue.
9. The house will fetch 30,000 dollars.

10. Please keep me this.
11. The food will last them a month.
12. On his death, the farm will pass to his son.
13. How high would you place the singer ?
14. He drank himself into unconsciousness.
15. The machine is recording now.
16. The tickets sold badly.
17. She laughed her disrespect.
18. We hammered the other team.
19. They are fighting a fire.
20. This student has mastered two foreign languages.

Unit Twenty-seven

1. The news broke.
2. My father has always enjoyed very good health.
3. That medicine burns so!
4. You will all be punished; I can except no one.
5. You should book early.
6. He ended his letter with good wishes to the family.
7. She always keeps warm.
8. I think her rather clever.
9. Her hair has been blowing (in the air).
10. The president called an election.
11. My case rests.
12. ——Do you live in the town ?
—— No, we're only visiting.
13. He thinks himself a great poet.
14. I don't buy that nonsense.
15. The two families have been joined in marriage.
16. The play is running in New York now.
17. Her condition turned for the worse.
18. His natural ability took him to the top.

19. The mother taught the children not to fight.

20. This book stands high in my opinion.

Unit Twenty-eight

1. We always visit at this hotel when we are in New York.

2. How does the first line run ?

3. She chaired the meeting.

4. Please stay seated.

5. Can you tell Jean from her twin sister ?

6. He tossed and turned all night. He couldn't sleep because of the heat.

7. The two brothers will never agree.

8. I reported to the police as soon as I heard the explosion.

9. ——Why is he still doing a lot of talks ?

——He is buying time.

10. My skirt is caught in the door.

11. He lit the old man up the stairs with a lamp.

12. The old man's mind traveled over the recent events.

13. The grass waved in the wind.

14. Have you replied to his letter ?

15. You place me in a very difficult position.

16. The murderer was shopped by his girl friend.

17. Let the line AB be equal in length to the line CD.

18. Jack broke free at last.

19. Does this sentence sound right ?

20. After years of living here, I feel that I belong.

Unit Twenty-nine

1. Everyone should keep the law.

2. His wife's coming home late worries him.

3. You wronged him by saying he could never improve his work.

4. She writes him a letter every day.

5. This friend wrote to ask me to come.

6. The children are flying the kites.
7. The food had caked in the pan.
8. The sea is calling him.
9. Her hair came to her knees.
10. Can this question go direct to the chairman ?
11. She is a good cook, as cooks go.
12. Can I run you home ?
13. The news reached me yesterday.
14. Father reached me that book.
15. The vapor clouded the window.
16. I enjoy reading novels.
17. Her husband took her class for her today.
18. John was taken ill.
19. The holidays raced by!
20. The price of food jumped last week.

Unit Thirty

1. Such a crime carries a serious punishment.
2. You should stand firm.
3. He lied himself out of trouble.
4. The girl took his smile to mean "Yes".
5. These shoes are going.
6. His story just won't wash with me.
7. I find that onions repeat.
8. The cake was topped with cream.
9. My papers are blowing about.
10. Where do you bank ?
11. She let her children play in the street.
12. I can't picture myself as a father.
13. 3 into 2 won't go.
14. The sea water ate away the rock.
15. Lightning played across the sky.

16. Your idea won't work in practice.
 17. Your tea is waiting; don't let it get cold.
 18. Dead leaves were flying about.
 19. You've only got yourself to think for the accident.
 20. The fighters threw themselves at each other.

Section Two

- | | | | |
|-----------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. BCBBB | BBACB | BDBDA | CBBCB |
| 2. CCABB | DADBD | CCACA | DCCCC |
| 3. DDACA | ADAAD | ABBBB | DDCDD |
| 4. ABBCD | DCAAB | ACCBC | AAADC |
| 5. BCDDC | ACCAC | BDDCD | BCBDD |
| 6. BCCCD | ACBBC | BDADA | ABCAC |
| 7. CDDCA | DDDCD | BABAB | BCCBD |
| 8. CDABD | DDBBD | BDABB | DCDCC |
| 9. CABDD | BDABB | DBADC | DCCAC |
| 10. DBCAA | CDBAD | ABBAA | CDDAC |
| 11. ACBCA | ABDAC | DBCBB | BDCAC |
| 12. ACDCB | DBCBB | BCCBA | ADAAB |
| 13. ABDCA | CAABD | DCABA | BCAAA |
| 14. ABDCA | DDBBD | CACBC | ABCCA |
| 15. BCACD | CBDAD | BABCB | DCCAD |
| 16. CABCB | BABAB | CBDBB | CCCCD |
| 17. BDDBC | DAACD | ADBAA | CAACB |
| 18. DBCCB | BCADB | BBBBC | ADDBA |
| 19. CDBAA | DACBC | ABCAA | ABBCA |
| 20. AADDC | CCBDC | BCDDB | ADADC |

Section Three

1. DCACC	ABDAB	BADBA	CDDAC
2. ACDDC	CCDAC	BBCAA	CBBCA
3. BADBC	AAABA	ACCAB	DDACD
4. ABACB	AAACB	BBBCB	BCBAA
5. DDBCD	DDBBB	DBAAC	ACACC
6. DDADB	BCDAB	ACBAB	DCBBB
7. ABBBB	BCCAA	CDBBC	BDABB
8. CBDDB	DBCCD	DDBC B	BDBAB
9. BCACD	ADDCB	DCBBB	AACCD
10. DBCCD	BDCBD	ACDDC	CDBC B
11. DADBD	AADDA	ABBDD	BBBDC
12. BABC B	DCDBB	CDCDD	BCDAB
13. AAABA	BCCCC	CACBD	CABAB
14. BDABD	DDCCB	CBCDB	ABBCB
15. DDBC B	CBACC	CADCA	ADCBA

Section Four

Open

Section Five

Unit One

1. B (the greatest achievement)
2. A (broken)
3. C (that)

4. B (felt)
5. B (~~and~~)
6. D (other)
7. D (poorly)
8. B (what)
9. C (guests')
10. C (Jim Dolan's)
11. A (Regardless)
12. D (me)
13. B (sat down)
14. D (was)
15. A (frightening)
16. C (had)
17. D (much)
18. D (which evolved)
19. B (can easily be made)
20. B (it)

Unit Two

1. D (delicious)
2. C (infringes)
3. C (its)
4. B (you be)
5. C (have)
6. A (themselves)
7. D (their)
8. D (is)
9. C (their)
10. C (declining steadily)
11. D (they come)
12. B (his friend's)
13. A (were)

14. C (than)
15. C (their thought)
16. B (was)
17. B (agreed upon)
18. B (the kind of persons)
19. C (have)
20. A (have made)

Unit Three

1. B (an)
2. A (nor)
3. C (than)
4. C (~~being~~)
5. B (who)
6. D (beautifully)
7. C (be built)
8. C (with)
9. D (into)
10. C (pull out)
11. B (to)
12. C (With)
13. B (200 years ago)
14. C (have)
15. C (from mastering)
16. B (to have)
17. C (has been)
18. D (burned)
19. D (slowed down)
20. B (maintain)

Unit Four

1. C (them)

2. D (wonderfully)
3. C (be)
4. A (increasing)
5. A (nearly)
6. C (nor)
7. B (swum)
8. D (he is)
9. A (as)
10. A (As)
11. A (had)
12. B (poorly)
13. B (to the moon)
14. A (clearly)
15. A (who)
16. B (have written)
17. B (read not only)
18. D (himself)
19. D (she bought)
20. A (as)

Unit Five

1. A (who)
2. C (taught)
3. C (worst)
4. A (would have gone)
5. D (to)
6. A (that)
7. D (letters constantly)
8. D (had)
9. A (Considering)
10. D (part-time)
11. D (fewer)

12. A (but)
13. B (almost)
14. C (whose)
15. D (may)
16. D (stolen)
17. D (similar)
18. A (an honest)
19. A (came)
20. A (insisted on publishing)

Unit Six

1. D (proclaimed)
2. C (rose)
3. B (is)
4. C (sitting)
5. C (going)
6. A (Let)
7. A (indicates)
8. A (had seen)
9. D (being)
10. B (swum)
11. B (drunk)
12. A (this sort of shoes)
13. D (reproducing)
14. C (receiving)
15. B (worst)
16. D (uniquely)
17. S (advise)
18. B (lay in)
19. B (his)
20. D (and)

Unit Seven

1. A (to resolve)
2. C (are)
3. A (~~has~~)
4. B (its)
5. C (as well as)
6. B (effects)
7. A (goes)
8. D (is)
9. B (to maneuver)
10. C (would have)
11. D (its claim)
12. A (remains)
13. A (look into)
14. D (extended)
15. C (to living)
16. B (to support)
17. C (regular)
18. D (deprived of)
19. D (was)
20. A (too)

Unit Eight

1. B (taken)
2. B (knows)
3. D (taught)
4. A (bad)
5. B (rise)
6. C (eaten)
7. C (has)
8. A (Having read)
9. C (very easily)

10. C (of snow)
11. D (was)
12. D (walking)
13. D (with)
14. C (to take)
15. C (determines)
16. C (but of the fact that)
17. D (being repaired)
18. B (any)
19. C (he delivered it)
20. D (his wanting)

Unit Nine

1. B (so)
2. D (listening)
3. A (learn)
4. C (than to travel)
5. A (In spite of)
6. C (did the Highway Department agree)
7. A (To overcome)
8. D (~~a~~)
9. C (him)
10. A (that)
11. C (his)
12. B (properly)
13. D (to)
14. B (are)
15. B (being taken)
16. B (fix up)
17. A (effects)
18. C (has)
19. D (phenomenon)

20. C (has)

Unit Ten

1. A (No matter what)
2. B (that)
3. C (is becoming)
4. C (but also)
5. B (on)
6. C (~~not~~)
7. A (had tried)
8. A (hurried)
9. A (reading)
10. C (which)
11. B (~~more~~)
12. D (rapidly growing)
13. B (he)
14. A (busily)
15. A (impatiently)
16. A (had risen)
17. B (will be)
18. D (had)
19. D (would buy)
20. B (got)

[General Information]

书名=英语结构要略

作者=萧立明著

页数=280

SS号=11150044

出版日期=2003年08月第1版

前言

目录

第1章 基本句型

- 1.1 概述
- 1.2 基本句型要素
- 1.3 动词的分类
- 1.4 英语五大基本句型
- 1.5 基本句型的转换
- 1.6 英语句子的运动形式
- 1.7 英语句子的分类

第2章 常用句型

- 2.1 概述
- 2.2 I Φ 型(SV)
- 2.3 L型(SVC)
- 2.4 T1型(SVOn & pro.)
- 2.5 T2型(SVodo)
- 2.6 T3型(SVO to do)
- 2.7 T4型(SVO-ing)
- 2.8 T5型(SVO that-从句)
- 2.9 T6型(SVO wh-从句)
- 2.10 D1型(SVoOn.)
- 2.11 D5型(SVoO that-从句)
- 2.12 D6型(SVoO wh-从句)
- 2.13 V2型(SVOC do(不带to的不定式))
- 2.14 V3型(SVOC to do)
- 2.15 V4型(SVOC-ing)
- 2.16 V8型(SVOC-ed)
- 2.17 X1型(SVOC n.)
- 2.18 X7型(SVOC adj.)
- 2.19 X9型(SVOC prep.)
- 2.20 常用句型小结

第3章 主从复合句

- 3.1 引言
- 3.2 名词从句
 - 3.2.1 that-从句的用法
 - 3.2.2 wh-从句的用法

3.3 定语从句

3.4 状语从句

3.4.1 时间状语从句

3.4.2 地点状语从句

3.4.3 原因状语从句

3.4.4 条件状语从句

3.4.5 让步状语从句

3.4.6 目的状语从句

3.4.7 结果状语从句

3.4.8 程度状语从句

3.4.9 比较状语从句

3.4.10 比例状语从句

3.4.11 方式状语从句

3.4.12 选择状语从句

第4章 句子的并列与衔接

4.1 引言

4.2 并列

4.3 衔接

4.4 衔接词语的分类

4.5 多功能连接词and的衔接作用

第5章 特殊句型

5.1 引言

5.2 关于SVA和SVOA句型

5.3 使役结构

5.4 It句型

5.5 There be句型

5.6 非生命主语句

5.7 特殊否定句

5.8 特殊比较句

5.9 特殊感叹句

第6章 多词动词句

6.1 引言

6.2 M1多词动词

6.3 M2多词动词

6.4 M3多词动词

6.5 M4多词动词

- 6.6 M5多词动词
- 6.7 M6多词动词
- 6.8 M7多词动词
- 6.9 M8多词动词
- 6.10 M9多词动词
- 6.11 M10多词动词

第7章 句子的压缩

- 7.1 引言
- 7.2 并列句的压缩
- 7.3 名词从句的压缩
- 7.4 定语从句的压缩
- 7.5 状语从句的压缩
- 7.6 并列句和主从复合句的特殊压缩

第8章 常见的句法错误

- 8.1 引言
- 8.2 主谓不合
- 8.3 称代错格
- 8.4 照应不妥
- 8.5 比较失调
- 8.6 词序不顺
- 8.7 前后矛盾
- 8.8 分离无依
- 8.9 苟简残缺
- 8.10 堆砌费解
- 8.11 省略不当

第9章 辞达五要则

- 9.1 引言
- 9.2 思想统一
- 9.3 结构紧凑
- 9.4 意思确切
- 9.5 中心突出
- 9.6 字音悦耳

第10章 篇章结构

- 10.1 引言
- 10.2 分类展发(Classification Development)
- 10.3 时序展发(Chronological Development)

- 10.4 空间展发(Spatial Development)
- 10.5 定义展发(Definition Development)
- 10.6 举例展发(Exemplification Development)
- 10.7 比较展发(Comparison Development)
- 10.8 对比展发(Contrast Development)
- 10.9 因果展发(Cause-Effect Development)

附录一 分类练习

Section One

Section Two

Section Three

Section Four

Section Five

附录二 参考答案

Section One

Section Two

Section Three

Section Four

Section Five